


Gem

# Connect

## الصف الخامس الابتدائى

الفصل الدراسى الثانى




**Prepared by:** Senior English Teachers






ذاكر صح

استمتع بتجربة التعلم التفاعلى مع الأضواء.

**طالب**

- فصول افتراضية.
- فيديوهات شرح الدروس.
- تدريبات واختبارات تفاعلية.
- تقارير متابعة المستوى.
- مسابقات وهدايا.
- اسأل الأضواء.

**ولى أمر**

- فيديوهات شرح الدروس.
- تدريبات واختبارات تفاعلية.
- تقارير متابعة مستوى الأبناء.
- هدايا ومكافآت.

**معلم**

- فصول افتراضية.
- بنك أسئلة.
- قم بإنشاء اختباراتك الخاصة.
- شارك اختباراتك مع طلابك وفصولك الخاصة.
- أرسل إشعارات المتابعة المختلفة.
- تقارير متابعة مستوى الطلاب.







Follow Us   



# Contents



## Theme 3 My society



## Theme 4 Being responsible












# Scope and sequence

## Theme 3: My society

| | Unit 7: Homes in Egypt | Unit 8: At the doctor's | Unit 9: My favorite animal |
|---|---|---|---|
| Vocabulary | ▸ The home: armchair, balcony, cushion, closet, elevator, oven, shower, television, bedroom, kitchen, bathroom, living room<br>▸ Adjectives: unfriendly, uncomfortable, unlucky, unsafe, unhappy, unfair, annoying, awesome, awful, boring, brilliant, cool, friendly, funny, interesting<br>▸ gate, oven, pot, reed, roof, rug, sleeping area, linen | ▸ Health: ankle, back, cold, cough, earache, headache, shoulder, sore throat, stomachache, toothache<br>▸ Nature: glacier, lake, ocean, river, stream bathwater, drinking water, fresh water, salt water, stream, salt, rain blind, trunk, flexible, tusk, spear, rope, unwell, relative, crowded, staff, injection, corridor, helpful, hospital, patient, bandage, sunscreen, honey and lemon, pill, cut knee, sunburn, headache, treatment, wound, bacteria, infect, heal, scissors, insect bite, cream, cleansing wipe, medical gloves, rubber band, safety pin, soap | ▸ Animals: kangaroo, panda, bat, lion, penguin, dolphin, snail, parrot, wonderful, wildlife park, pouch, shelter, rest, save, trunk, branch, nut, exhausted, breeze, useless, ungrateful, comfortable |
| Language | ▸ Saying where things are, i.e. on the right/left, in the middle of the room, on the wall<br>▸ The negative prefix -un, i.e. unfriendly, uncomfortable, unlucky, etc.<br>▸ Past simple affirmative and negative, i.e. I visited her house when I was five. I didn't know the answer to the teacher's question.<br>▸ Past time expressions with ago, i.e. two years ago | ▸ Using "have" to talk about illness, i.e. I have a headache.<br>▸ Do you have an earache?<br>▸ Asking about illness, i.e. What's the matter?<br>▸ Where does it hurt?<br>▸ Negative prefixes, i.e. un- (unusual), ir- (irresponsible), il- (illegal), im- (impossible) | ▸ "Can" for ability in the present, i.e. I can play basketball. I can't speak Italian.<br>▸ "Could" for ability in the past, i.e. I could speak French when I lived in France. I couldn't take the bus so I had to walk.<br>▸ The noun suffix -er, i.e. teach – teacher -ed and -ing adjectives, i.e. I am very interested in History. History is so interesting! |
| **Skills** – Reading | ▸ Story about a dangerous experience in the jungle<br>▸ Text about homes in Ancient Egypt<br>▸ Blog about unusual homes | ▸ Story about listening to other people's opinions<br>▸ Text about a hospital in India<br>▸ Text about the health benefits of honey<br>▸ Presentation about staying healthy | ▸ An online chat about a day at a wildlife park<br>▸ Aesop's *The travelers and the tree*<br>▸ Text about Ancient Egyptian society<br>▸ Email about an unusual animal |
| Listening | ▸ Dialog between two friends about living in a new apartment | ▸ Dialog between mom and son about feeling unwell<br>▸ Dialog between doctor and patient | ▸ about the water cycle |
| Speaking | ▸ Describing your own home<br>▸ Talking about the perfect room | ▸ Talking about illness | ▸ Talking about things you could/couldn't do at different ages<br>▸ Talking about sources of water<br>▸ Discussion about Ancient Egyptian society |
| Writing | ▸ Blog about unusual homes using a range of adjectives | ▸ A short paragraph about staying healthy | ▸ Email about an unusual animal |
| Project | ▸ Presentation about an Ancient Egyptian home | ▸ Poster about what to include in a first-aid kit | ▸ Infographic about an animal habitat |
| Phonics | ▸ Correctly pronounce double vowels, e.g. pool, sheep<br>▸ Correctly pronounce oo in words: /u:/, as in pool; /ʊ/ as in good; /ʌ/, as in blood | ▸ /f/ and /v/ minimal pairs, e.g. van – fan, life – live<br>▸ Correctly pronounce the negative prefixes un- (unusual), ir- (irresponsible), il- (illegal), and im- (impossible) | ▸ Correctly pronounce voiced sounds: /v/ (e.g. vase) and /w/ (e.g. winter) |
| Life skills | ▸ Decision making: Decorating your own bedroom | ▸ Critical thinking: Working out treatments for illnesses, Why is water so important for our health? | ▸ Critical thinking: Why are trees important?<br>▸ Why is water so important in our everyday lives? |
| Values | ▸ Respect: Showing respect for cultural heritage | ▸ Respect: Respecting other people's opinions<br>▸ Appreciating science | ▸ Appreciation and gratitude: Appreciating the small things in life |
| Issues and challenges | ▸ Cultural responsibility: How can we preserve ancient artifacts for the future? | ▸ What do you do to stay healthy? | ▸ Environmental responsibility: Water is important in our life. |
| Integrated cross-cultural topics | ▸ Social studies: How Ancient Egyptions made their homes<br>▸ Math: Rounding decimals<br>▸ Project: Presentation about an Ancient Egyptian home | ▸ Social studies: Distribution of water on Earth<br>▸ Math: Bar charts<br>▸ Project: Poster about what to include in a first-aid kit | ▸ Science: The water cycle<br>▸ Social studies: Ancient Egyptian society<br>▸ Project: Infographic about an animal habitat |



## Theme 4: Being responsible

| | Unit 10: Let's visit Egypt | Unit 11: Getting out in the fresh air | Unit 12: Vacations |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Vocabulary** | ▸ Places in a city museum, restaurant, market, bank, beach, library, station, factory, monument, bank, square, shopping mall, cuisine, originally, on vacation<br>▸ Activities play music, bake bread, read a book, make a phone call, visit a temple, sail on the Nile, painting, artifact, tomb, hieroglyphics | ▸ Nature: city, village, leaf, hill, lock, plant, tree, stream, grass, cactus, tamarisk plant, palm tree, desert snail, jerboa<br>▸ Adverbs: happily, slowly, heavily, sadly, hard, well, quickly, carefully, nicely, brightly, mainland, route, fascinating<br>▸ Hiking equipment hiking shoes, scarf, blanket, water bottle, hat, sunglasses, snack, map, tent, sweater, sunlight, exercise, scientist, silence, tip, nature | ▸ Travel: hotel, passport, swimming pool, suitcase, ticket, tourist, beach, camera, city, museum, sunglasses, theme park<br>▸ Resources: natural, man-made, stone, plastic, sunlight, gold, sand, galabeya, leather, bread, fruit, crops, grain, basket, reeds<br>▸ Water sources: rain, river, well, lake, water pump, stream, tap, ocean, groundwater, surface water, desert, land, materials, nutrient, traditional, day trip, capital, wander, handicrafts, stall |
| **Language** | ▸ Use imperatives to tell someone to do something:<br>▸ *Don't be late tomorrow!*<br>▸ *Come here, Lama!*<br>▸ *Go to the end of the street and turn right.* | ▸ Review of plural nouns, i.e. house – houses, city – cities, leaf – leaves<br>▸ Forming adverbs, i.e. slow – slowly, happy – happily, irregular forms: hard – hard, fast – fast, good – well<br>▸ Review of comparative adjectives. i.e. The train is quicker than the bus.<br>▸ Talking about plans and making suggestions, i.e. Are you free on the weekend? That sounds like fun/great. Cool!<br>▸ Awesome! How about / What about meeting up? Let's meet at 3.<br>▸ Word building: adjectives and adverbs suffixes : -ful and -fully (e.g. beauty - beautiful - beautifully) | ▸ Prepositions of time, i.e. on Mondays / my birthday, at 8 p.m. / lunchtime, in June / 2010<br>▸ The adjective suffixes -ous (e.g. dangerous, famous) and -ive (e.g. creative, expensive |
| **Skills** | | | |
| **Reading** | ▸ Text about a famous Egyptian city<br>▸ Text about culture in Ancient Egypt<br>▸ Story about the importance of asking for help and being polite | ▸ Emails about a nature trail weekend<br>▸ Text about the Red Sea Mountain Trail<br>▸ Text messages: making plans for a trip | ▸ Email about a vacation<br>▸ Short texts about natural and man-made resources<br>▸ Text about freshwater sources<br>▸ Text about a trip to Jordan<br>▸ Diary entry about a trip |
| **Listening** | ▸ Vox pops about Alexandria | ▸ Conversation between three friends deciding what to pack for a nature trip | ▸ about natural resources<br>▸ Short dialogs about plans for different times of the day |
| **Speaking** | ▸ Talking about places in your town or city<br>▸ Giving instructions<br>▸ Asking for and giving directions | ▸ Discussion about what to pack on a nature trip<br>▸ Discussion about the value of getting out into nature<br>▸ Describing a picture using adjectives and adverbs | ▸ Talking about a place you would like to visit<br>▸ Talking about things to do on vacation<br>▸ Talking about things you do at different times of the day |
| **Writing** | ▸ Paragraph about your town or city | ▸ Text messages: making plans for a trip | ▸ Diary entry about a day when you did something special |
| **Project** | ▸ Poster about your perfect town | ▸ Design and present the perfect nature trail | ▸ A poster about your perfect vacation |
| **Phonics** | ▸ Identify and correctly pronounce diphthongs, e.g. /əʊ/ as in show, /eɪ/ as in eight, /ɔɪ/ as in toy, /aɪ/ as in right. | ▸ Correctly pronounce the sounds /n/ (e.g. nose) and /ŋ/ (e.g. sing) | ▸ Correctly pronounce the sounds /θ/ (e.g. thing) and/ ð/ (e.g. these) |
| **Life skills** | Creativity and collaboration:<br>▸ Creating 'your perfect town' | Creativity and collaboration:<br>▸ Creating 'the perfect nature trail<br>Critical thinking:<br>▸ Identifying the value of getting out into nature | Decision making: Things to take on vacation Where to go on vacation |
| **Values** | ▸ Honesty and kindness: Offering, accepting and recognizing the need for help<br>▸ Being polite | ▸ Well-being: Appreciating and making the most of your time in nature | Independence and flexibility: Deciding on what you would enjoy doing on vacation<br>Respect and personal growth: Respecting privacy: do not read other people's diaries |
| **Issues and challenges** | ▸ Self-reflection: Do you ask for help when you need it?<br>▸ Why is asking for help a good thing? | ▸ Making sensible choices: How can you enjoy your time in nature? | ▸ Environmental responsibility: Using natural and man-made resources<br>▸ How can you make your vacation more environmentally friendly? |
| **Integrated cross-cultural topics** | Social studies: Cultural life in the Ancient Egyptian civilization<br>Math: Estimating<br>Project: Poster about your perfect town | Social studies and Geography: The Red Sea Mountain Trail and the Maaza people<br>Math: Adding mixed numbers | Science: Natural and man-made resources<br>Math: Triangles |

# THEME 3

# My society

مجتمعي









## Parents' tips:

**Theme Three "My society"** aims to help students understand more about the community they live in. They should know more about the suitable environment to live in and how to make their environment easier to live the most common celebrations in their community, and what makes their community special such as; food, culture, and so on.

**المحور الثالث "مجتمعي"** يهدف إلى مساعدة التلاميذ في فهم مجتمعهم الذي يعيشون فيه. يجب عليهم أن يتعرفوا أكثر بالبيئة المناسبة للمعيشة وكيف يجعلون من بيئتهم مكانًا أسهل للمعيشة، وكذلك الاحتفالات الهامة بمجتمعهم وما يجعل مجتمعهم مميزًا مثل: الطعام والثقافة وغيرهما.



Unit 7

# Homes in Egypt

## منازل فى مصر



### Unit Overview

- **By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:** بنهاية هذه الوحدة سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
- listen, read, research, and write about Egyptian homes now and in Ancient Egypt.
  - يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن المنازل المصرية الآن وفى مصر القديمة.
- talk about the home and furniture.
  - يتحدث عن المنزل و الأثاث.
- read, understand, and listen to a short dialog about different homes.
  - يقرأ، يفهم، ويستمع إلى محادثة قصيرة عن منازل مختلفة.
- understand and use the simple past to talk about past events.
  - يفهم ويستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط ليتحدث عن أحداث فى الماضى.
- learn how to say double vowels.
  - يتعلم كيف ينطق أصوات حروف متحركة مزدوجة.
- write a simple blog about an unusual home.
  - يكتب مدونة بسيطة عن منزل غير عادى.
- research and make a presentation about an Ancient Egyptian home.
  - يبحث ويقوم بعمل عرض تقديمى عن منزل مصرى قديم.

## Warm up

This unit is about Egyptian homes now and in Ancient Egypt. It also talks about furniture at home.

تتحدث هذه الوحدة عن المنازل فى مصر الآن ومصر القديمة. تتحدث أيضًا عن الأثاث فى المنزل.

### Did you know?



In Ancient Egypt, mud bricks kept the inside of the house cool in hot weather. Small windows and vents on the roof let air into the house. Ancient Egyptians stayed cool by hanging wet reeds in their windows. The breeze would blow through the water-soaked plants and send cool air into their houses.

فى مصر القديمة، كان الطوب الطينى اللبن يُبقى المنزل من الداخل باردًا فى الطقس الحار. تسمح النوافذ الصغيرة والفتحات على السطح بمرور الهواء داخل المنزل. كان المصريون القدماء أيضًا يحافظون على برودتهم بتعليق القصب المبلل على النوافذ. كان النسيم يمر عبر النباتات المبللة بالماء فيبعث الهواء البارد داخل منازلهم.

### I can find it out!

There were different types of houses in Ancient Egypt; "reed huts" were the first type of homes built in Ancient Egypt. These huts were constructed from papyrus, reeds, and animals' skin.
The second type was "mud brick house", it is a simple structure for poorer people.
The third type was "merchant home", it was also constructed of mud, but it was larger.
The fourth type was "stone mansions" it was constructed of stones for nobles.



reed huts أكواخ القصب



mud brick house
منزل مبنى من الطوب اللبن



stone mansions
قصور حجرية

كانت هناك أنواع مختلفة من المنازل فى مصر القديمة؛ كانت «أكواخ القصب» هى النوع الأول من المنازل التى تم بناؤها فى مصر القديمة. شيدت هذه الأكواخ من أوراق البردى والقصب وجلد الحيوانات.
النوع الثانى كان «منزل من الطوب اللبن»، وهو عبارة عن بناية بسيطة للفقراء.
أما النوع الثالث فكان «منزل التاجر»، وقد تم تشييده أيضًا من الطين ولكنه كان أكبر.
أما النوع الرابع فكان عبارة عن «قصور حجرية» شيدت للنبلاء.



STUDY



Lesson 1

# The Home



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



## Main Vocabulary



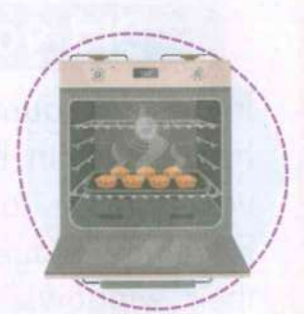
elevator
مصعد



closet
خزانة



cushion
وسادة



oven
فرن



balcony
بلكونة



armchair
كرسي ذو ذراعين



television
تلفاز



shower
دش



bed
سرير



bedroom
غرفة النوم



living room
غرفة المعيشة



kitchen
مطبخ



bathroom
حمام





## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| modern (adj.) | حديث | apartment | شقة |
| part | جزء | closer (adj.) | أقرب |
| better | أفضل | easier (adj.) | أسهل |
| space | مساحة | traditional (adj.) | تقليدي |
| fantastic (adj.) | رائع | poster | ملصق |
| comfortable (adj) | مريح | | |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Present | Past | Present | Past |
| move ينتقل | moved | share يتشارك | shared |
| **Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة** | | | |
| Present | Past | Present | Past |
| see يرى | saw | say يقول | said |

## Expressions and Phrases

| | |
|---|---|
| welcome to ... | مرحبًا بك في ... |
| Come in! | تفضل بالدخول! |
| How long ...? | كم المدة...؟ (للسؤال عن فترة زمنية) |
| since I was born. | منذ ولادتي |
| had to + (inf.) | كان يجب عليك أن |

**Parents' tips**
Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.



## Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

### Why is Fareeda happy?



**Fareeda:** Hi Dina, welcome to my new apartment! Come in!

أهلًا دينا، مرحبًا بك فى شقتى الجديدة! تفضلى بالدخول!





**Dina:** Thanks! Do you like living here?

شكرًا ! هل تحبين العيش هنا؟

**Fareeda:** I love it! It's a great apartment! I like this part of town and it's much bigger than our old apartment.

أحبها! إنها شقة رائعة! أحب هذا الجزء من المدينة وهى أكبر من شقتنا القديمة.



**Dina:** How long did you live in your old apartment?

كم المدة التى عِشتها بشقتك القديمة؟

**Fareeda:** Twelve years, since I was born. Then my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment.

اثنا عشر عامًا، منذ ولادتى. ثم كان على والدى الانتقال إلى وظيفة جديدة، ولذلك انتقلنا إلى شقة أقرب.



**Dina:** So, what's better about this new apartment?

إذًا، ما الأفضل بهذه الشقة الجديدة؟

**Fareeda:** Come and see. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. My mom says it's much easier to cook in.

تعال لترى. المطبخ الجديد أكبر، والفرن أكثر حداثة. تقول أمى إن الطهى فيه أسهل بكثير.











**Dina:** Very nice. And this is the living room?

لطيف جدًا. و هذه هى غرفة المعيشة؟

**Fareeda:** Yes, as you can see, there's more space so we can have a bigger television. Look at these traditional cushions. They were a gift from Grandma.

نعم، كما ترين، هناك مساحة أكبر ولذلك يمكننا أن نملك تلفازًا أكبر. انظرى إلى هذه الوسادات التقليدية. لقد كانوا هدية من جدتى.



**Dina:** Oh, yes! What about the bedrooms?

أووه، نعم ! ماذا عن غرف النوم؟

**Fareeda:** We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Amira, but our bedroom is really big. And we have two bathrooms.

لدينا ثلاث غرف نوم الآن. أنا أتشارك غرفة مع أختى، أميرة، لكن غرفتنا كبيرة حقًا، ولدينا حمامان.



**Dina:** It's lovely! The balcony is fantastic, too – what a great view!

هذا لطيف! البلكونة رائعة أيضًا - ياله من منظر رائع!

## Language Functions

**Asking about a period:** السؤال عن المدة الزمنية:

How long ...?

e.g.
A: How long did you live in your old apartment?
B: Twelve years, since I was born.

**Parents' tips**

Help your child listen to the dialog using the QR code and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her classmates.

ساعد طفلك فى الاستماع إلى المحادثة باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code، ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.



# Lesson 1



14

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):



5

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 A: Do you like living here? | a. ( ) What a great view! |
| 2 We have a new oven ... | b. ( ) with my sister Soha. |
| 3 I share a room ... | c. ( ) moved to a new apartment. |
| 4 The balcony is fantastic. | d. ( ) B: Yes, it's a great apartment. |
| 5 A: How long did you live in your old apartment? | e. ( ) which is much easier to cook in. |
| | f. ( ) B: Twelve years, since I was born. |



## 2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة:



4

1 share – room – sister – a – my – I – with.

..............................................................................

2 better – new – this – What's – about – apartment?

..............................................................................

3 to – new – apartment – my – Welcome.

..............................................................................

4 new – more – oven – The – modern – is.

..............................................................................

## 3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "My new apartment" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:





5

three bedrooms – big balcony



..............................................................................

..............................................................................

..............................................................................

**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child read and match. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.

(2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.

(3) Help your child write about the given topic. ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن الموضوع المعطى.





# TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 1





12

## Listening

## 1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

4

1 Dina is at Fareeda's new .............................. .

2 The new apartment is much .............................. than the old apartment.

3 They have three .............................. and two bathrooms.

4 The balcony is .............................. .



## 2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:



6

My name is Dalida. I moved to a new apartment last week. I love living here in this new apartment. I like this part of town and it's much bigger than our old apartment. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. <u>It's</u> much easier to cook in. The living room is bigger than the old one so we can have a bigger television. We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Dareen, but our bedroom is really big. I like our new apartment.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 Dalida moved to a new .............................. last week.

a) school b) class c) apartment d) city

2 The underlined pronoun "<u>It</u>" refers to the .............................. .

a) apartment b) bed c) kitchen d) oven

**B Answer the following questions:**

3 What is the general idea of the text? ..............................

4 How many bedrooms are there in the new apartment? ..............................



## 3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

1 Why is fareeda happy

..............................................................................

2 i share a room with my sister

..............................................................................




| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |




Lesson 2

# My Perfect Room




## Language Focus

### Telling where things are:

الأخبار عن أماكن الأشياء:



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

e.g.



On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it.

على اليمين سريري بجانبه مكتب.



On the left, there is my sister's bed.

على اليسار سرير أختي.



In the middle of the room, there is an armchair.

في منتصف الغرفة، يوجد كرسي ذو ذراعين.



On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

على الحائط يوجد الكثير من ملصقات الحيوانات.

**Parents' tips**

Help your child tell where things around him/her are correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يخبر بأماكن الأشياء من حوله بطريقة صحيحة.





## Prefix "un-"

The prefix "un-" means "not".

البادئة "-un" تعني «لا».

e.g. He looks unhappy. = He doesn't look happy.

The armchair is very uncomfortable. = The armchair isn't comfortable.

### Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| unfriendly غير ودود | not kind to someone | غير طيب مع شخص ما |
| uncomfortable غير مريح | something that doesn't feel nice to sit on or wear on your body | شيء لا تشعر بالراحة عندما تستخدمه للجلوس أو عند ارتدائه |
| unlucky غير محظوظ | something bad happens to you without a reason | شيء سيئ يحدث لك بدون سبب |
| unsafe غير آمن | dangerous | خطر |
| unhappy غير سعيد | sad | حزين |
| unfair غير عادل | something that happens that isn't morally right or fair | شيء يحدث غير صحيح أخلاقيًا او عادل |

**Parents' tips**

Help your child use the prefix "un-" correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم البادئة "-un" بطريقة صحيحة.

## The past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط

**Listen, point, and say:** استمع، أشِر وقل:

### Usage: الاستخدام

**We use the past simple tense to talk about:**

يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن:

- Something that happened once: شىء ما حدث لمرة واحدة:
  e.g. I visited her house when I was five. زرت منزلها عندما كان عمرى ٥ سنوات.
- Something that happened several times in the past: شىء ما حدث لعدة مرات فى الماضى:
  e.g. We went to my aunt's house at the beach every summer.
  ذهبنا لمنزل عمتى على الشاطئ فى كل صيف.
- Something that was true for some time in the past: شىء ما كان حقيقة لفترة من الزمن فى الماضى:
  e.g. He loved living in his grandmother's apartment as a child.
  هو كان يحب العيش فى شقة جدته عندما كان طفلاً.
- Expressions with ago: التعبيرات مع "ago":
  e.g. I met her in Zagazig two years "ago". لقد قابلتها فى مدينة الزقازيق منذ سنتين.

### Affirmative: الإثبات

**1) Regular verbs:** الأفعال المنتظمة:

Subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + (ed/d/ied) … .

e.g.



I visited my grandma yesterday.
زرت جدتى بالأمس.




- We add "-ed" at the end of most regular verbs.
  - نضيف "-ed" فى نهاية معظم الأفعال المنتظمة.

  e.g. want ➡ wanted   help ➡ helped




- When the regular verb ends with "e", we add only "-d" at the end of the verb.
  - عندما ينتهى الفعل المنتظم بـ "e" نضيف فقط "-d" فى نهاية الفعل.

  
  e.g. die ➡ died   create ➡ created




- When the regular verb ends with "y" preceded by a consonant letter, we delete the "y" and add "-ied" at the end of the verb.
  - عندما ينتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف الـ "y" مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن، نحذف الـ "y" ونضيف "-ied" فى نهاية الفعل.

  e.g. carry ➡ carried







**2) Irregular verbs:** الأفعال غير المنتظمة:

Irregular verbs are all different. We have to learn the affirmative past simple of each irregular verb. الأفعال غير المنتظمة مختلفة. يجب علينا أن نتعلم كل فعل غير منتظم على حدة:

e.g.

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| come | يأتى | came | eat | يأكل | ate |
| go | يذهب | went | know | يعرف | knew |
| meet | يقابل | met | tell | يخبر | told |
| set | يجهز | set | | | |

### Negative: النفى:

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل… .

e.g.



I didn't know the answer to the teacher's question.
أنا لم أكن أعرف الإجابة عن سؤال المعلم.

### Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ هل:

A: Did + subject + (inf.) مصدر الفعل…?

| B: Yes, | subject | did. |
|---|---|---|
| B: No, | | didn't. |

e.g.



A: Did you travel all over Egypt?
هل سافرت فى جميع أنحاء مصر؟
B: Yes, I did.
نعم ، لقد سافرت.

e.g.

A: Did you eat Om Ali yesterday?
هل أكلت «أم على» بالأمس؟
B: No, I didn't.
لا، لم آكلها.



## Wh- Question: السؤال باستخدام أدوات الاستفهام:

| A: Question word | did | subject | (inf.) مصدر الفعل ...? |
|---|---|---|---|
| B: Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل ...... | | | |



e.g.

A: When did it rain? متى أمطرت؟

B: It rained yesterday. أمطرت بالأمس.




- عند الإجابة تحول "you" فى السؤال إلى "I" أو "We".

## Check point

**Read and choose the correct answer:** اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 I (help – helped – am helping – helping) my mom carry our heavy cases yesterday.

2 I (don't – didn't – wasn't – doesn't) travel to America when I was a child.

3 A: Did you (visit – visited – visiting – visits) your grandma last holiday?

B: Yes, I did.

**Parents' tips**

Help your child identify the past simple tense in the affirmative and question form.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على زمن الماضى البسيط في حالة الإثبات والسؤال.







## Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Howler monkeys in the jungle

My uncle is a scientist(1) and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America for work. He loved it there because the people were very friendly(2) and helped him with his work. Then, about three years ago, something frightening(3) happened to him and he was lucky(4) he lived to tell me about it!

He was very interested in howler monkeys(5) and wanted to do some research into their family groups. A local villager(6) told him where there was a howler monkey family nearby and he was very happy. But the villager also said, "Tomorrow, we are going to have a lot of rain so it could be unsafe(7)."

My uncle set out to look for the howler monkey family and soon he was deep in(8) the jungle. He could hear the monkeys and he looked up. He knew he was very close to them. Then the rain started. It was very heavy rain. Soon, there was water everywhere and he couldn't see the path(9) to go forward or back. Suddenly, lots of water came toward him and carried him away down(10) to the river. He was very frightened.

Suddenly, he saw a hand and someone was shouting. It was the villager. He took Uncle's hand and said, "Now you are safe!" My uncle was very happy indeed(11)!

| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | عالم |
| (2) | ودود |
| (3) | مخيف |
| (4) | محظوظ |
| (5) | قرود العواء (قرود أمريكية) |
| (6) | قروى |
| (7) | غير آمن |
| (8) | فى أعماق |
| (9) | طريق |
| (10) | حملته للأسفل |
| (11) | حقًا |

## Check point

1 What is his uncle's job?

......................................................

2 Why was his uncle happy at the end?

......................................................

**Parents' tips**

Help your child read the passage and understand the new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويفهم الكلمات الجديدة.

الترجمة:

- عمى عالم ويحب الحيوانات. عندما كان صغيرًا سافر كثيرًا إلى أمريكا الجنوبية للعمل. لقد أحب المكان هناك لأن الناس كانوا ودودين للغايه وساعدوه فى عمله. ثم، منذ حوالي ثلاث سنوات، شيء ما مخيف حدث له وكان محظوظًا لأنه عاش ليخبرني به!
- كان عمى مهتمًا جدًّا بالقردة العواء «قردة أمريكية» وأراد إجراء بعض الأبحاث على مجموعات عائلاتهم. أخبره قروى محلى بمكان عائلة قرود العواء فى مكان قريب وكان سعيدًا جدًّا. لكن القروى قال أيضًا، «غدًا، سوف تتساقط أمطار غزيرة لذا قد يكون الوضع غير آمن.»
- شرع عمى فى البحث عن عائلة القردة العواء وسرعان ما أصبح فى العمق فى الأدغال. كان يسمع القرود ونظر إلى الأعلى. وعلم أنه كان يبدو قريبًا جدًّا منهم. ثم بدأ المطر. كانت أمطارًا غزيرة جدًّا. سرعان ما أصبح الماء فى كل مكان ولم يستطع رؤية الطريق حتى يتقدم أو يرجع. فجأة، تدفق الكثير من الماء حاملًا إياه للأسفل إلى النهر. كان خائفًا جدًّا.
- فجأة، رأى يدًا و كان شخص ما يصيح. كان القروى. أخذ يد العم وقال، «الآن أنت بأمان!» كان عمى سعيدًا جدًّا بحق!




# Lesson 2



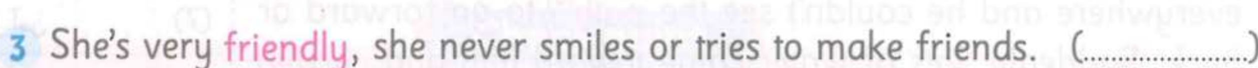

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): 5

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 I never sit on that green armchair. | a. ( ) when I was five. |
| 2 I traveled to Aswan ... | b. ( ) dangerous. |
| 3 "Unfriendly" means ... | c. ( ) something bad happens to you without reason. |
| 4 In the middle of the room, ... | d. ( ) not kind to someone. |
| 5 "Unsafe" means ... | e. ( ) It's very uncomfortable. |
| | f. ( ) there is an armchair. |



## 2 Read and correct the underlined words: اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التى تحتها خط: 4



1 I visit my uncle two months ago. (..................)

2 The people don't help him with his work yesterday. (..................)

3 She's very friendly, she never smiles or tries to make friends. (..................)

4 On the wall, there are a poster of my favorite animal. (..................)

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة: 4

1 ago – met – years – her – I – two.

..............................................................................

2 you – travel – Did – over – Egypt – all?

..............................................................................

3 didn't – by – They – here – come – airplane.

..............................................................................

4 traveled – South – a lot – uncle – My – America – in.

..............................................................................

**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child read and match. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.

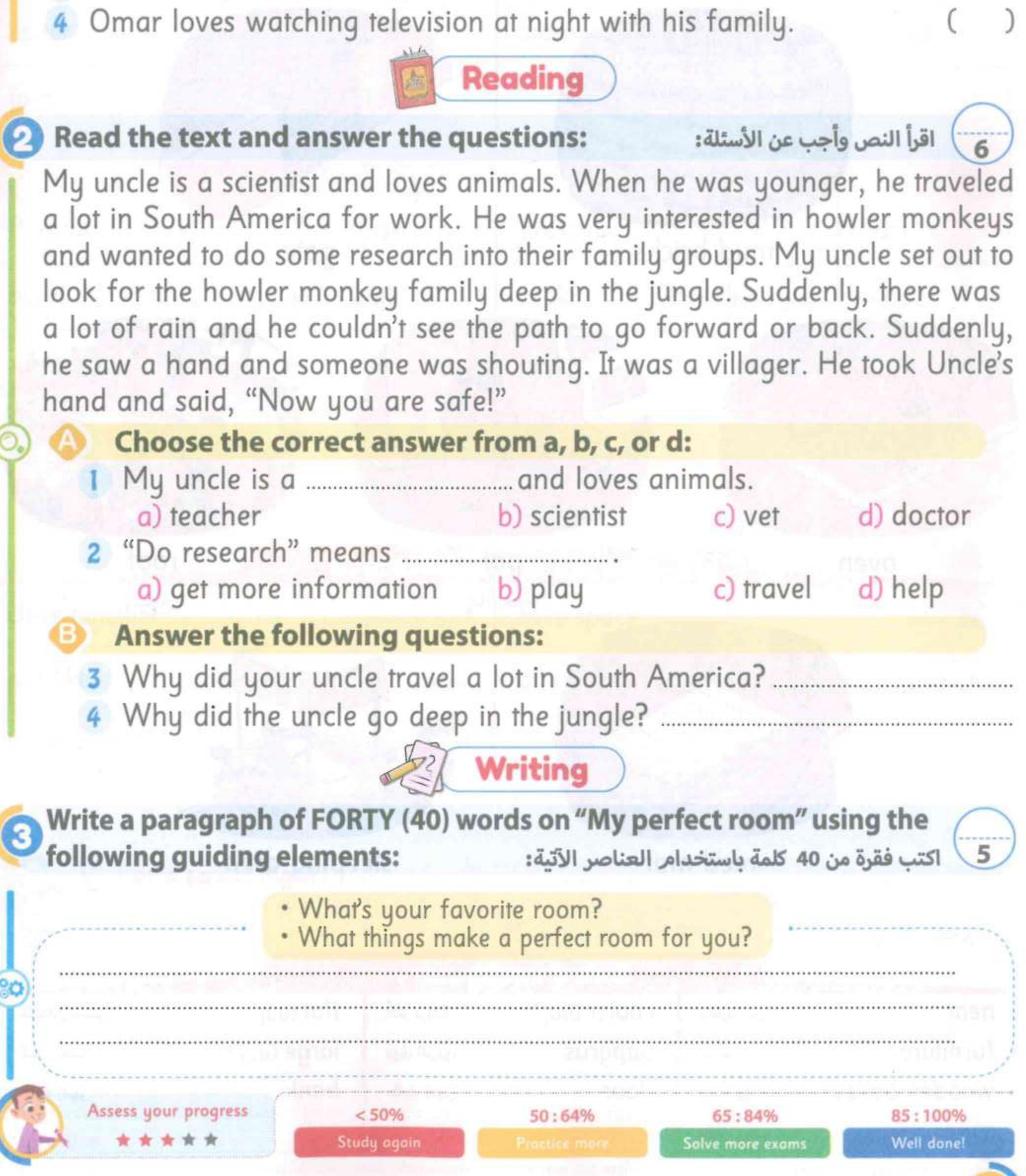
(2) Help your child correct the underlined words. ساعد طفلك أن يصحح الكلمات التى تحتها خط.

(3) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.





# TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 2



15

### Listening

## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ): 4

1 Omar's favorite room is his bedroom. ( )

2 On the right, there is a couch with two modern cushions. ( )

3 On the left, there is a desk. ( )

4 Omar loves watching television at night with his family. ( )

### Reading

## 2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America for work. He was very interested in howler monkeys and wanted to do some research into their family groups. My uncle set out to look for the howler monkey family deep in the jungle. Suddenly, there was a lot of rain and he couldn't see the path to go forward or back. Suddenly, he saw a hand and someone was shouting. It was a villager. He took Uncle's hand and said, "Now you are safe!"

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 My uncle is a .............................. and loves animals.

a) teacher b) scientist c) vet d) doctor

2 "Do research" means .............................. .

a) get more information b) play c) travel d) help

**B Answer the following questions:**

3 Why did your uncle travel a lot in South America? ..............................

4 Why did the uncle go deep in the jungle? ..............................

### Writing

## 3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "My perfect room" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 5

• What's your favorite room?
• What things make a perfect room for you?

..............................................................................

..............................................................................

..............................................................................



Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |




# Lessons 3 & 4



## Ancient Egyptian Homes



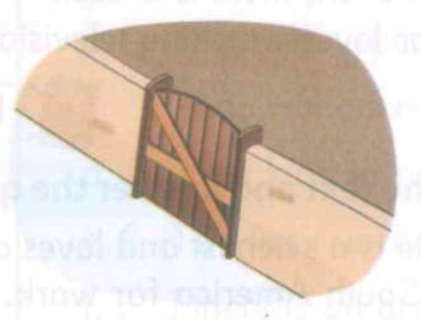
### Main Vocabulary



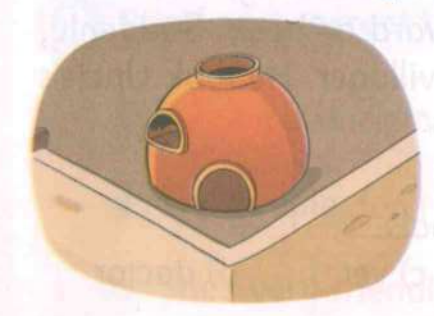
**Listen, point, and say:** استمع، أشر وقل:



mud bricks
الطوب اللبن



gate
بوابة



oven
فرن



pot
إناء (حلة)



roof
سطح



reed mat
حصيرة مصنوعة من القصب



sleeping area
منطقة للنوم

### Extra vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| near | بالقرب من | cooler (adj.) | أكثر برودة | flat (adj.) | مسطح/مستو |
| furniture | أثاث | papyrus | ورق البردى | large (adj.) | كبير الحجم |
| wooden boxes | صناديق خشبية | floor | طابق (دور) | bank | ضفة النهر |
| style | طراز | | | | |





### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular verbs | | | أفعال منتظمة | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
| use | يستخدم | used | paint | يدهن | painted |
| cook | يطهى | cooked | relax | يسترخى (يستريح) | relaxed |
| cover | يغطى | covered | store | يخزن | stored |
| join | يلتحق بـ | joined | | | |
| **Irregular verbs** | | | **أفعال غير منتظمة** | | |
| Present | | Past | Presetnt | | Past |
| build | يبنى | built | make | يصنع / يجعل | made |
| sleep | ينام | slept | keep | يحافظ على | kept |
| blow | يهب | blew | fall | يسقط | fell |

### Expressions and Phrases

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| close together | قريبون من بعضهم | save space | يوفر مساحة |
| just like | تمامًا مثل | all right | على ما يرام |
| never to fall | غير قابل للسقوط أبدًا | | |



**Let's say it right!**

لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (tu) فى كلمة (furniture) ينطقان (tʃ) (تش).

**Parents' tips**

Help your child listen to the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.





## Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks[1] made very strong walls.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler.

Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed, and slept there on hot nights.

(1) الطوب اللبن

(2) حصيرة مصنوعة من القصب

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats[2] to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with two floors. This saved space. So they could build more houses. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

### Check point

1 How did Ancient Egyptians keep their houses cool?

..............................................................................................................................

2 How was the furniture in Ancient Egypt?

..............................................................................................................................

**Parents' tips**

Help your child read the passage and understand the new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويفهم الكلمات الجديدة.

**الترجمة:**

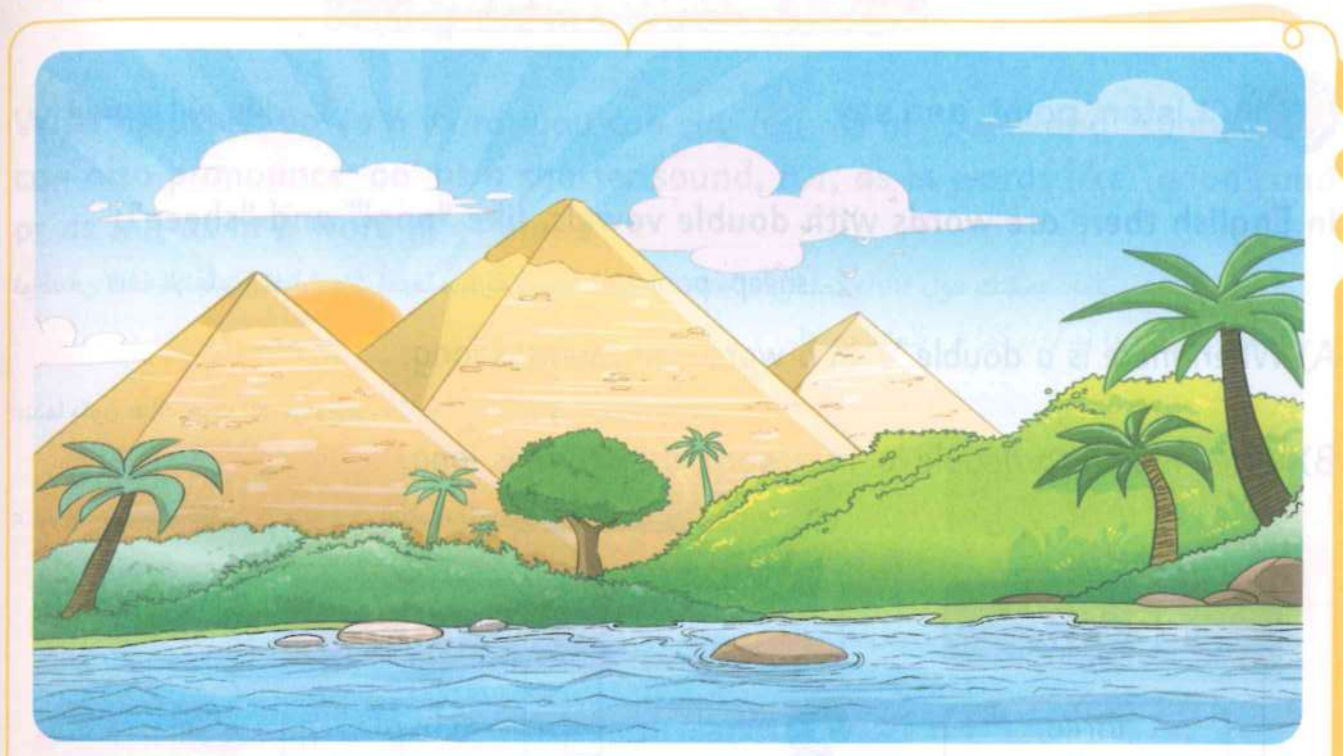
- فى مصر القديمة، بنى الكثير من الناس منازلهم بالقرب من النيل. فكانوا يستخدمون مياهه للشرب والطبخ والغسيل. كما استخدموا أيضًا الطين من النهر لصنع الطوب لبناء منازلهم. الطوب اللبن يصنع حوائط قوية للغاية.
- أراد المصريون القدماء الحفاظ على برودة منازلهم. ساعد الطوب اللبن فى فعل هذا. قام بعض الناس أيضًا بطلاء منازلهم باللون الأبيض لجعلها أكثر برودة. كانت جميع المنازل المصرية القديمة تحتوى على أسطح مستوية، والتى كانت أكثر جزء بارد فى المنزل. غالبًا ما كانت تطبخ العائلات، ويتناولون الطعام، ويسترخون، وينامون هناك فى الليالي الحارة. كان الأثاث فى المنازل المصرية القديمة مختلفًا تمامًا عن اليوم. كانت هناك حصائر مصنوعة من القصب للجلوس والنوم عليها. استخدموا أوراق البردى لتغطية النوافذ والأبواب. كان هذا يبقى الحشرات فى الخارج. فى كل بيت كانت هناك أوان وسلال كبيرة لتخزين المحاصيل وصناديق خشبية للملابس. لم يكن لدى الكثير من الناس أسرٌ أو كراس.
- فى المدن، كان الناس يعيشون قريبين جدًّا من بعضهم البعض، ولذلك قاموا ببناء منازلهم أطول، مع طابقين. هذا يوفر مساحة. ولذلك تمكنوا من بناء منازل أكثر. انضمت منازل المدينة معًا، تمامًا كما هو الحال اليوم. فى الريف، عادة ما تحتوى المنازل على طابق واحد فقط، كما تحتوى أيضًا على حديقة. كانوا يزرعون الخضار ويربون الدجاج بها.







## Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



By the banks of the ancient River Nile, — على ضفاف نهر النيل القديم،

Egyptian houses had a special style: — كان للبيوت المصرية أسلوب خاص:

Dark inside with small windows, — الظلام من الداخل مع النوافذ الصغيرة ،

Reed mats on the roof where the cool wind blows, — حصائر القصب على السطح حيث تهب الرياح الباردة،

Outside under the stars at night, — فى الخارج تحت النجوم ليلاً ،

One family together, feeling all right. — عائلة واحدة معًا، يشعرون أنهم على ما يرام.

Mud from the Nile made their walls — جعل الطين من النيل جدرانهم

Safe and strong, and never to fall. — آمنة وقوية ولا تسقط أبدًا.




Each two lines rhyme together. They end with the same sound.

كل سطرين بينهما قافية، ينتهيان بنفس الصوت.

**Parents' tips**

Help your child read the poem correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصيدة بطريقة صحيحة.

# Pronunciation



## Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

In English there are words with double vowels, like "pool" and "sheep".

توجد فى اللغة الإنجليزية كلمات ذات أحرف متحركة مزدوجة، مثل pool وsheep.

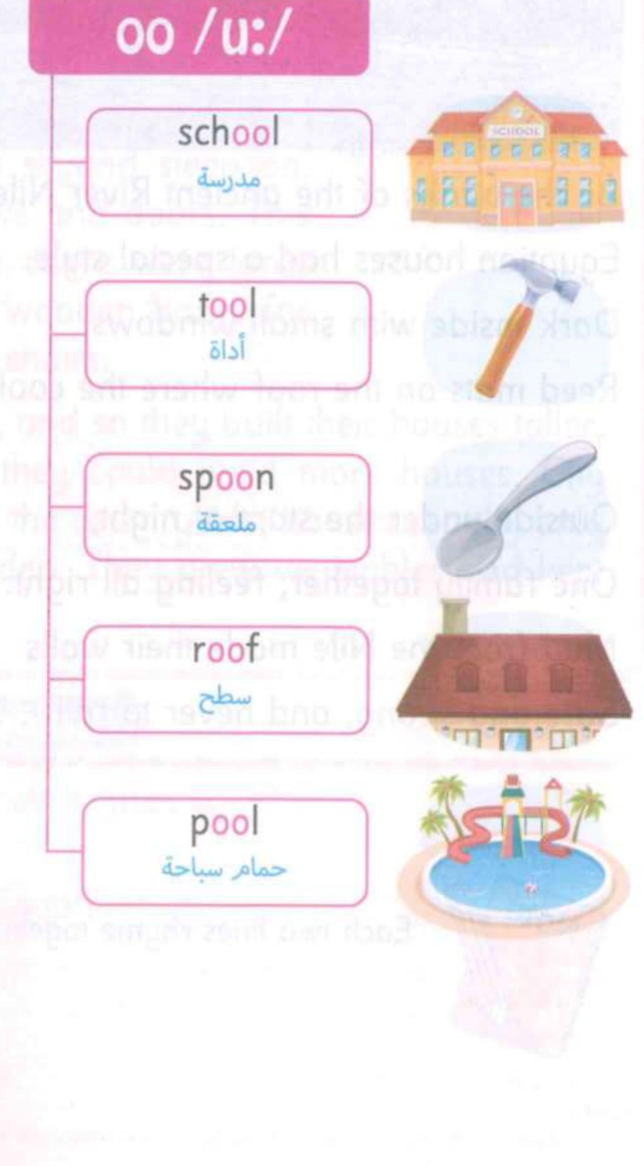
A) When there is a double 'e' in a word, the sound is long.

عندما يكون هناك حرف "e" مزدوج فى الكلمة، يكون الصوت طويلًا.

B) When there is a double 'o' in a word, the sound is long.

عندما يكون هناك حرف "o" مزدوج فى الكلمة، يكون الصوت طويلًا.



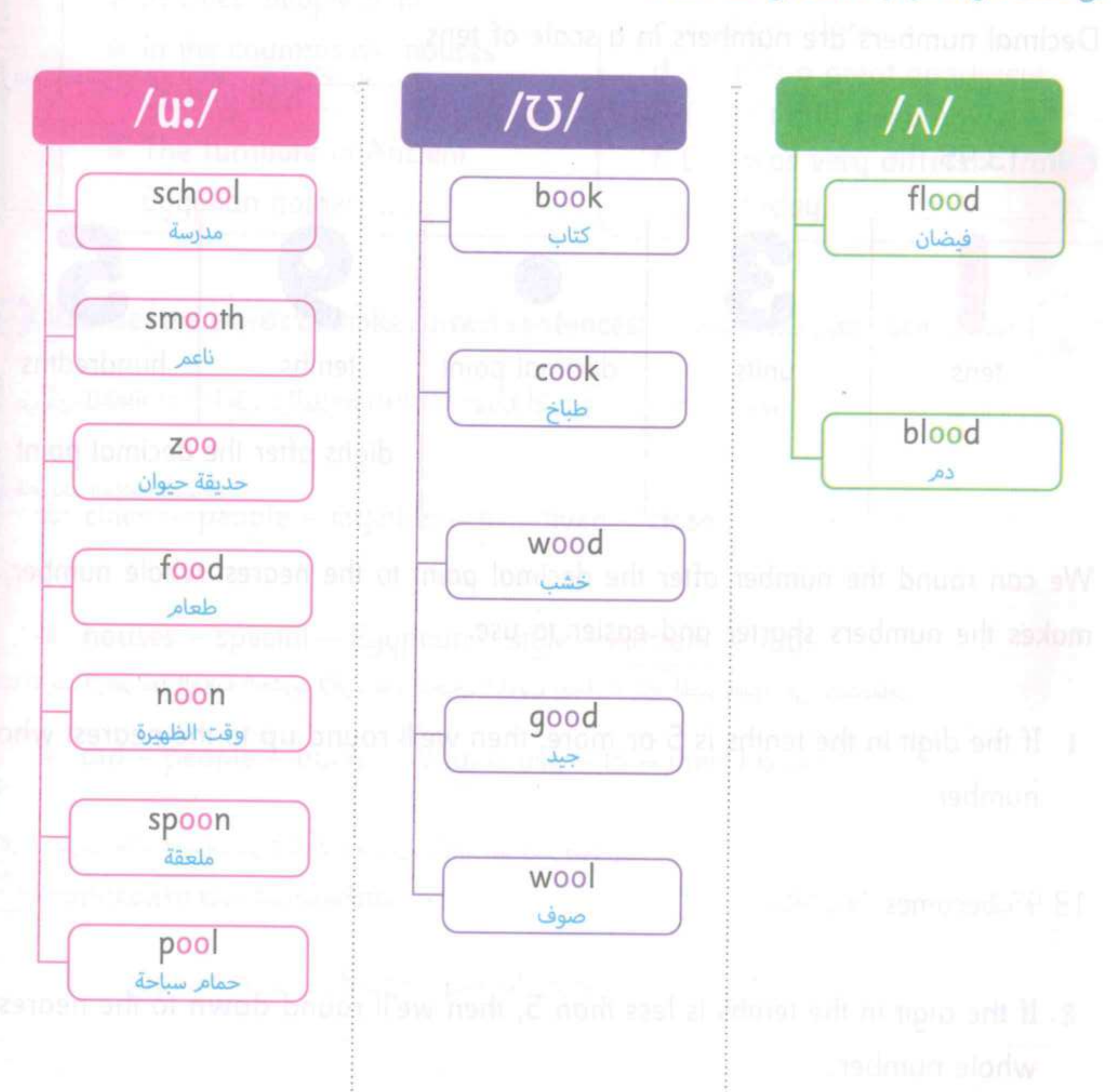





## Saying 'oo' in words نطق 'oo' فى الكلمات

When you see 'oo' in a word, you can say /u:/, as in "pool" and "spoon". We can also pronounce 'oo' as a shorter sound, /ʊ/, as in words like "good" and or as /ʌ/, as in a word like "blood".

عندما ترى "oo" فى كلمة، يمكنك قول /u:/، كما فى pool and spoon. يمكننا أيضًا نطق "oo" كصوت أقصر، /ʊ/، كما فى كلمات مثل good أو /ʌ/، كما فى كلمة blood.




**Parents' tips**

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.






Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

## Rounding decimals تقريب الكسور العشرية

**What are decimal numbers?** ما هى الأرقام العشرية؟

Decimal numbers are numbers in a scale of tens.

الأرقام العشرية هى أرقام بمقياس عشرات.

e.g. 13.95



| 1 | 3 | . | 9 | 5 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| tens<br>عشرات | units<br>آحاد | decimal point<br>العلامة العشرية | tenths<br>جزء من عشرة (1/10) | hundredths<br>جزء من مئة (1/100) |
| | | | digits after the decimal point<br>أرقام بعد العلامة العشرية | |

We can round the number after the decimal point to the nearest whole number. It makes the numbers shorter and easier to use.

يمكننا تقريب الرقم بعد العلامة العشرية لأقرب عدد صحيح. التقريب يجعل الأرقام أقصر وأسهل فى الاستخدام.

1. If the digit in the tenths is 5 or more, then we'll round **up** to the nearest whole number.

إذا كان الرقم فى خانة العشرات هو ٥ أو أكثر، فسنقرب لأقرب أكبر رقم صحيح.

13.95 becomes 14.

2. If the digit in the tenths is less than 5, then we'll round **down** to the nearest whole number.

إذا كان الرقم فى خانة العشرات أقل من ٥، فسنقرب لأقرب أصغر رقم صحيح.

134.3 becomes 134.

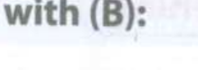
**Parents' tips**

Help your child identify how to round decimal numbers.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية تقريب الكسور العشرية.



# PRACTICE Lessons 3&4



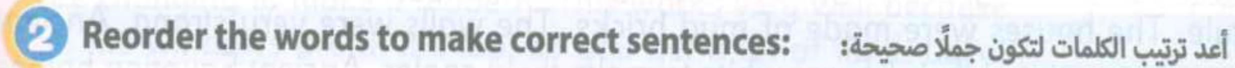



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 Ancient Egyptians used mud ... | a. ( ) their houses taller. |
| 2 There were reed mats to ... | b. ( ) from the river to make bricks. |
| 3 In cities, people built ... | c. ( ) one floor. |
| 4 In the countryside, houses usually had ... | d. ( ) It's a great apartment. |
| 5 The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes ... | e. ( ) sit and sleep on. |
| | f. ( ) was very different from today. |



## 2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة:




1. near – their – the – homes – Nile – They – made.
   ..........................................................
2. cities, – people – together – In – lived – close.
   ..........................................................
3. houses – special – Egyptian – style – Ancient – had.
   ..........................................................
4. did – people – build – What – use – to – their homes?
   ..........................................................

## 3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:




1. egyptian houses had a special style
   ..........................................................
2. where did people build their homes in ancient Egypt?
   ..........................................................

**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child read and match.
(2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.
(3) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.



# TEST YOURSELF | on Lessons 3 & 4






15



## Listening

**1 Listen and complete:** استمع و أكمل: 4

1. Salma is doing research about Ancient Egyptian .......................... .
2. The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very .......................... from today.
3. There were .......................... mats to sit and sleep on.
4. They used .......................... to cover the windows and doors.





## Reading



**2 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. Ancient Egyptian houses had a special style. The houses were made of mud bricks. The walls were very strong. Ancient Egyptians painted their houses white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to cover the windows and doors to keep the insects outside.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the .......................... .
   a) Nile b) desert c) schools d) temples
2. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to the .......................... .
   a) pyramids b) beds c) houses d) windows

**B Answer the following questions:**

3. What did Ancient Egyptians use papyrus for? ..........................
4. What's the general idea of the text? ..........................



## Writing



**3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Ancient Egyptian Homes" using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 5

mud bricks – reed mats

..........................

..........................

..........................

Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |








# STUDY

Lessons 5 & 6

# Writing/Project





**Look and read:** انظر واقرأ:

**Dalida** BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

**Wednesday, 8th November**

Unusual homes(1)



Hi! My name's Dalida and I like blogging(2) about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual homes. This topic is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect(3), so she sometimes takes me to see some brilliant(4) places. It's really awesome!

I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online – it's upside down! It is actually an old farmhouse(5) which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. Local people like it because it fits in(6) very well with the local landscape(7), which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological(8) because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool! 🙂



What do you think of it? Do you like it?

Upside down house in the Netherlands

| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | منازل غير عادية |
| (2) | التدوين |
| (3) | مهندس معمارى |
| (4) | رائع |
| (5) | منزل ريفى |
| (6) | يلائم |
| (7) | مناظر طبيعية |
| (8) | بيئى |



## Definitions

| | |
|---|---|
| blogging<br>التدوين | to write about something in an online blog<br>للكتابة عن شيء ما فى مدونة عبر الإنترنت |
| ecological<br>بيئى | related to living things and their environments<br>تتعلق بالكائنات الحية وبيئاتها |





**Parents' tips**

Help your child recognize the form of a blog.

ساعد طفلك فى التعرف على شكل المدونة.

**الترجمة:**

منازل غير عادية

أهلاً! اسمى داليدا وأنا أحب التدوين عن أشياء مختلفة.

أكتب هذا الأسبوع عن منازل غير عادية. هذا الموضوع ممتع للغاية بالنسبة لي لأن أمي مهندسة معمارية، لذلك تأخذنى أحياناً لرؤية بعض الأماكن الرائعة. إنه رائع حقًّا!

لقد وجدت هذا المنزل غير العادى فى هولندا عبر الإنترنت - وكانت قمته للأسفل! إنه فى الواقع منزل ريفى قديم يغيره الناس لجعله حديثًا. يعمل المنزل بشكل جيد للغاية لأن جميع النوافذ فى الأعلى، وبالتالي تحصل على الكثير من الضوء. يحبه السكان المحليون لأنه يتلاءم جيدًا مع المناظر الطبيعية المحلية، وهى المزارع والحقول. كما أنه صديق للبيئة لأنه يستخدم الهواء والماء والشمس للتدفئة وتوليد الطاقة للمنزل. ذاك لطيف جدًّا!

ما رأيك فى ذلك؟ هل يعجبك ذلك؟



## Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

### Steps of writing a blog خطوات كتابة المدونة

1. Write about something you like and enjoy. اكتب عن شيء تحبه وتستمتع به.
2. Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use contractions (I'm, it's) and words like 'awesome' and 'cool'. اكتب لقرائك كما لو أنك تتحدث إليهم. استخدم الاختصارات مثل "it's / I'm" وكلمات مثل "رائع ولطيف"
3. Use exclamation marks (!) and emojis:  استخدم علامات التعجب (!) والوجوه الضاحكة.
4. Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs. أبدِ رأيك ودع قراءك يبدون آراءهم.
5. Check that your spelling is correct. تأكد من أن هجاءك صحيح.

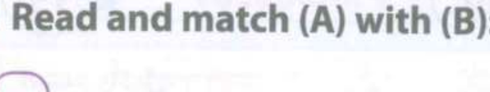
• Using adjectives in a blog makes it interesting.
استخدام الصفات في المدونة يجعلها ممتعة أكثر.

| Positive adjectives | | Negative adjectives | |
|---|---|---|---|
| funny | مضحك | awful | قبيح |
| awesome | مدهش | annoying | مزعج |
| brilliant | ذكي | boring | ممل |
| cool | رائع | | |
| friendly | ودود | | |
| interesting | ممتع | | |

Parents' tips
Help your child identify the steps of writing a blog correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على خطوات كتابة المدونة بطريقة صحيحة.



# PRACTICE



# Lessons 5 & 6



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): (5)

**A**

1. Dalida likes blogging ...
2. My mom is an architect, ...
3. There is an unusual house in the Netherlands, ...
4. "Blogging" is to write about something ...
5. "Ecological" means relating to ...

**B**

a. ( ) in an online blog.
b. ( ) living things and their environments.
c. ( ) about different things.
d. ( ) it's upside down.
e. ( ) It's a city.
f. ( ) she takes me to some brilliant places.

## 2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة: (4)

1. blogging – I – different – things – about – like.
..........................................................................
2. is – upside down – Netherlands – in – The – house – the.
..........................................................................
3. is – that – Where – house – ecological?
..........................................................................
4. mom – architect – My – an – is
..........................................................................

## 3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Unusual homes" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: (5)



Where is it?
Why is it unusual?

..........................................................................
..........................................................................
..........................................................................

Parents' tips
(1) Help your child read and match.
(2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.
(3) Help your child write a paragraph correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرة بطريقة صحيحة.



# TEST YOURSELF | on Lessons 5 & 6



## Listening 12



**1 Listen and complete:** استمع وأكمل: 4

1. Dalida likes ................... about different things.
2. This week she's writing about ................... homes.
3. Dalida's mom is an ...................
4. She found an unusual house in the Netherlands online – it's ............ down!

## Reading



**2 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

There is an unusual house in the Netherlands online – it's upside down! It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape, which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool!

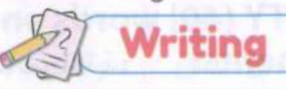
**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. The upside down house is in ...................
   a) America  b) England  c) Egypt  d) the Netherlands
2. Upside down houses get lots of ................... .
   a) water  b) light  c) moon  d) electricity

**B Answer the following questions:**

3. Why do people like the upside down house? ...................
4. What makes this house ecological? ...................

## Writing





**3 Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 2

1. The house is in the netherlands
...................
2. it is an old farmhouse
...................



Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |



# UNIT 7 REVIEW



## Vocabulary

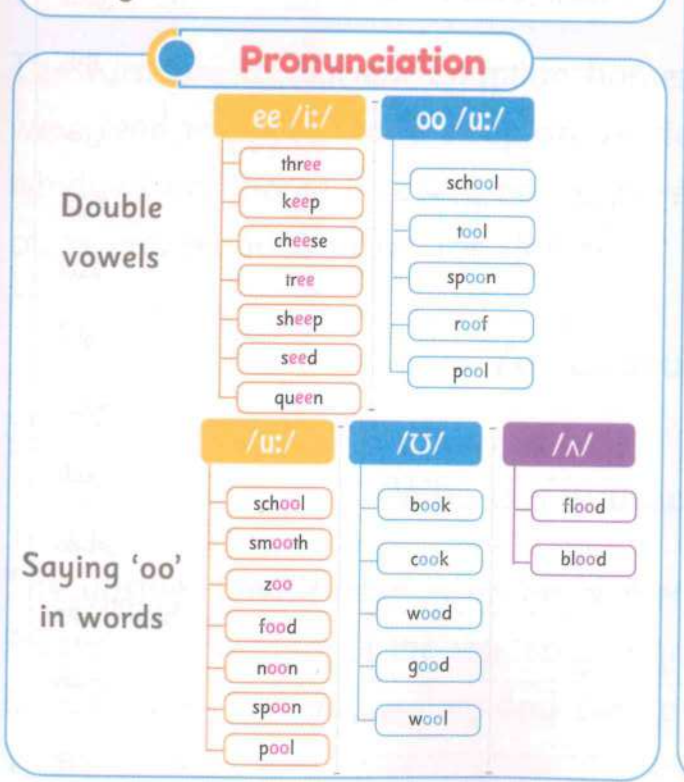






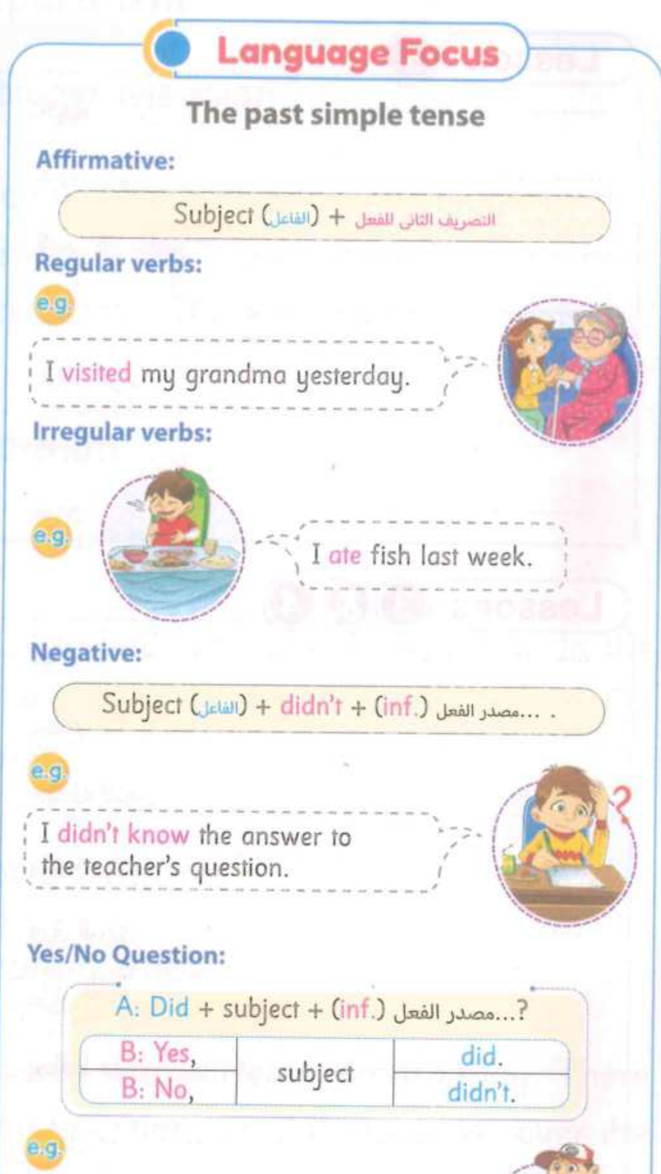


## Pronunciation

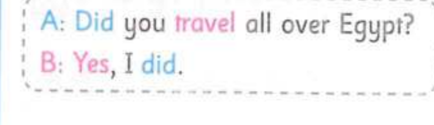




## Language Focus

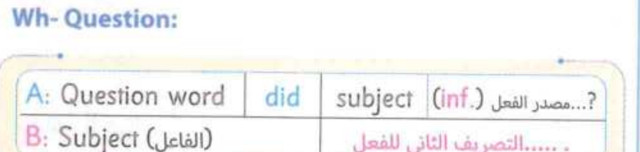








e.g.

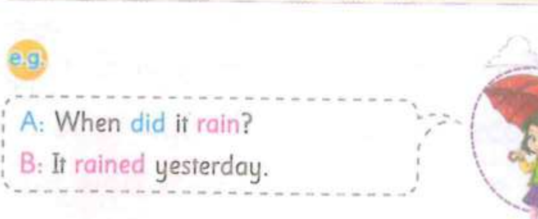




Wh- Question:

| A: Question word | did | subject | (inf.) مصدر الفعل...? |
|---|---|---|---|
| B: Subject (الفاعل) | | التصريف الثاني للفعل..... . | |

e.g.







# Check Your Vocabulary



## Lesson 1

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| .............................. | خزانة | .............................. | مصعد |
| .............................. | فرن | .............................. | وسادة |
| .............................. | كرسي ذو ذراعين | .............................. | بلكونة |
| .............................. | دش | .............................. | تلفاز |
| .............................. | غرفة النوم | .............................. | سرير |
| .............................. | مطبخ | .............................. | غرفة المعيشة |
| .............................. | مريح | .............................. | حمام |

## Lessons 3 & 4

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| .............................. | بوابة | .............................. | الطوب اللبن |
| .............................. | سطح | .............................. | إناء (حلة) |
| .............................. | منطقة للنوم | .............................. | حصيرة مصنوعة من القصب |
| .............................. | طوب | .............................. | طين |
| .............................. | ورق البردي | .............................. | أثاث |
| .............................. | طراز | .............................. | طابق |
| .............................. | يحافظ على | .............................. | ثلاثة |
| .............................. | شجرة | .............................. | جبن |
| .............................. | بذرة | .............................. | خروف |
| .............................. | مدرسة | .............................. | ملكة |
| .............................. | ملعقة | .............................. | أداة |
| .............................. | حمام سباحة | .............................. | سطح |
| .............................. | حديقة الحيوان | .............................. | ناعم |
| .............................. | صوف | .............................. | طعام |
| .............................. | كتاب | .............................. | وقت الظهيرة |
| .............................. | خشب | .............................. | طباخ |
| .............................. | فيضان | .............................. | جيد |



# WRITING TIME

### "My new apartment"

more modern – bigger television

I moved into a new apartment with my family. The new kitchen is bigger and the oven is more modern. There is more space in the living room so we can have a bigger television. We have three bedrooms now. There are two bathrooms and a fantastic balcony.

### "My bedroom"

On the right – armchair

I love my bedroom. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

### "Ancient Egyptian homes"

reed mats – storing crops

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes.

### "An unusual home"

- Where is it?
- Why is it unusual?

The upside down house is in the Netherlands. It is actually an old farmhouse. All the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool!

## 1 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1. There is a table (in – at – of – on) the middle of the living room.
2. He's very (unfair – unkind – unlucky – unfriendly) because he missed the bus.
3. He (traveled – travels – is traveling – traveling) all over Egypt last year.
4. It (doesn't – isn't – didn't – don't) rain yesterday.

## 2 Read and correct the underlined words: اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التى تحتها خط: 4

1. They didn't came by airplane. (....................)
2. I never sit in that armchair – it's very comfortable. (....................)
3. Where do you go last week? (....................)
4. His grandma die last year. He was very sad. (....................)

## 3 Read and rewrite the following: اقرأ وأعد كتابة الآتى: 4

1. We carry our heavy bag to the car today. (yesterday)

..........................................................................................

2. I don't arrive on time. SB (didn't)

..........................................................................................

3. I always spend my holiday at Alexandria. (last holiday)

..........................................................................................

4. I listened to music yesterday. (Did)

..........................................................................................

**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child read and choose. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار.
(2) Help your child correct the underlined words. ساعد طفلك أن يصحح الكلمات التى تحتها خط.
(3) Help your child read and rewrite correct sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.







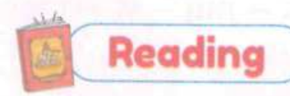


## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ): 4

1. I share a room with my brother. ( )
2. On the left, there is my bed with a desk next to it. ( )
3. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair. ( )
4. There are posters of animals on the wall. ( )

## 2 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

1. The .................... in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today.
2. There were .................... mats to sit and sleep on.
3. They used .................... to cover the windows and doors.
4. There were large .................... and baskets for storing crops.





## 3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): 5

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 A: Where do you live? | a. ( ) something happens without a reason. |
| 2 The balcony is fantastic. | b. ( ) with two cushions. |
| 3 There is an armchair ... | c. ( ) She never tries to make friends. |
| 4 She is very unfriendly. | d. ( ) something that isn't morally right or fair. |
| 5 'Unfair' means .... | e. ( ) B: I live in an apartment. |
| | f. ( ) What a great view! |



## 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

Fareeda's parents had to move to a new job, so they moved to a closer apartment. Fareeda loves the new apartment because it is bigger than the old one. The new kitchen is bigger and the oven is more modern; her mom says it's easier to cook in. There is more space in the living room so they can have a bigger television. They have three bedrooms now. Fareeda shares a room with her sister, Amira, but their bedroom is really big. They have two bathrooms and a fantastic balcony.

**A** **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. The text is mainly about Fareeda's new ............................ .
   a) job   b) apartment   c) bike   d) school
2. The underlined word '<u>share</u>' means to ..................... the same room together.
   a) eat   b) drink   c) play   d) use

**B** **Answer the following questions:**

3. Why did Fareeda's parents move into a new apartment?

   ......................................................................................................

4. Summarize the text into two sentences.

   ......................................................................................................

## Writing

### 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة: (4)

1. did – <u>How</u> – live in – long – you – apartment – your?

   ......................................................................................................

2. left, – bed – <u>On</u> – sister's – my – is – the – there.

   ......................................................................................................

3. and – a scientist – <u>My</u> – animals – loves – uncle – is.

   ......................................................................................................

4. visited – was – when – five – <u>I</u> – her – house – I.

   ......................................................................................................

### 6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: (2)

1. what's better about this new apartment

   ......................................................................................................

2. This week i'm writing about unusual homes

   ......................................................................................................

### 7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "My new apartment" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: (5)

much bigger – easier to cook in

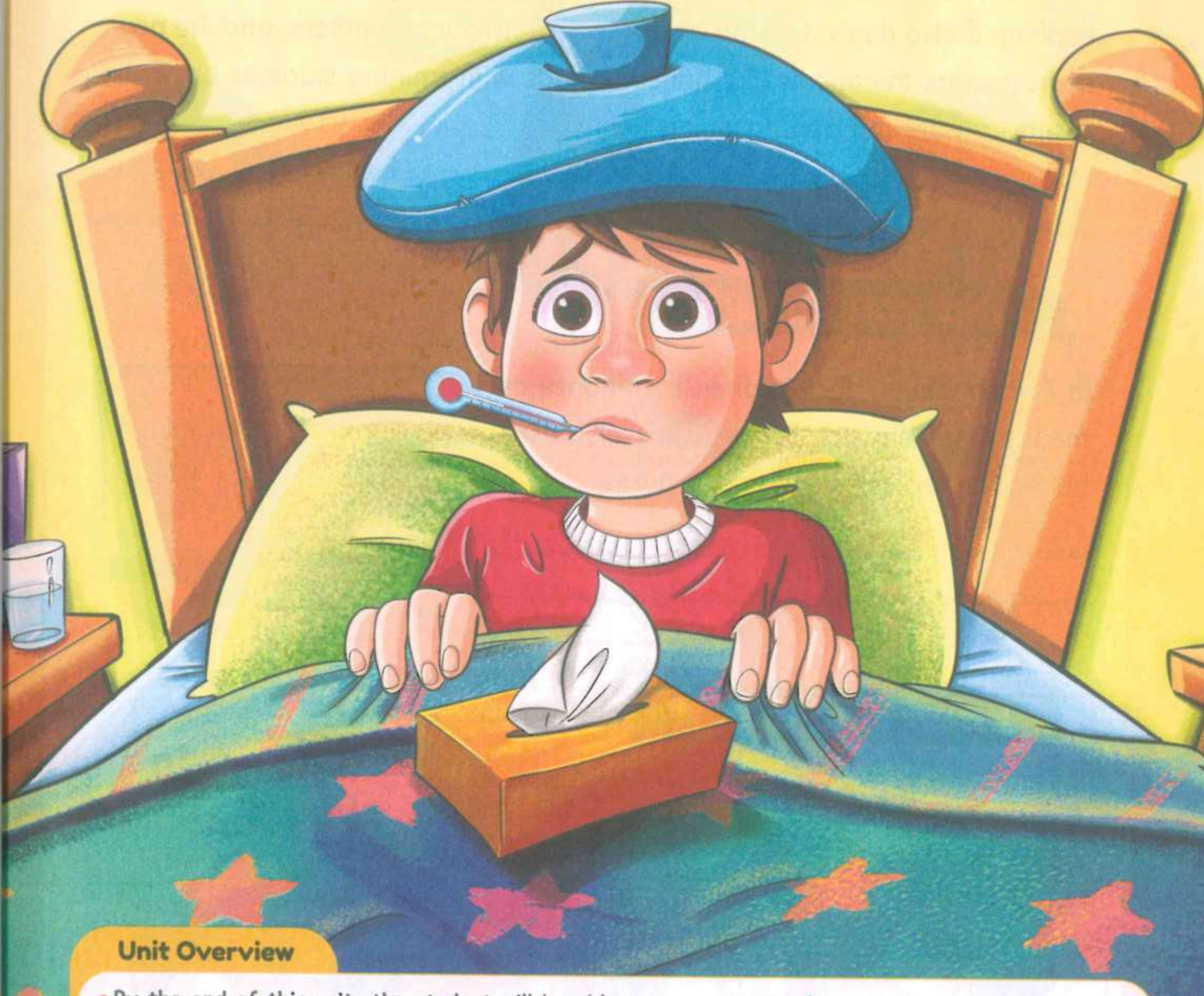
......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................





**Unit Overview**

- **By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:** بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - listen, read, research, and write about different illnesses and treatments. - يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن الأنواع المختلفة من الأمراض والعلاجات.
  - read a story about an elephant. - يقرأ قصة عن فيل.
  - practice using "have" to talk about illnesses. - يتدرب على استخدام "have" للتحدث عن الأمراض.
  - listen to and understand a conversation between a doctor and a patient. - يستمع ويفهم محادثة بين دكتور ومريض.
  - learn about and use the prefix " un, ir, il, and im". - يتعلم عن، ويستخدم البادئة "un, ir, il و im".
  - understand the difference between /f/ and /v/ sounds. - يفهم الفرق بين الأصوات /f/ و /v/.
  - write a short paragraph about staying healthy. - يكتب فقرة قصيرة عن البقاء بصحة جيدة.
  - plan what to put in a first-aid kit and make a poster. - يضع خطة لما يجب وضعه فى حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية ويصنع ملصقًا.

## Warm up

This unit is about different illnesses and how to deal with them and keep healthy. It also deals with the importance of listening to others, and the power of traditional treatments like honey. It ends with training students on writing a short paragraph about staying healthy.

هذه الوحدة عن الأمراض المختلفة وكيفية التعامل معها والحفاظ على صحتك. كما يتناول أهمية الاستماع للآخرين، وقوة العلاجات التقليدية مثل العسل. وتنتهي بتدريب الطلاب على كتابة فقرة قصيرة حول البقاء بصحة جيدة.

### Did you know?

In Ancient Egypt, doctors often used honey as medicine to help sick people. They also used honey for healing wounds and burns.



فى مصر القديمة، غالبًا ما كان الأطباء يستخدمون العسل كعلاج لمساعدة المرضى . واستخدموا العسل أيضًا لعلاج الجروح والحروق.

### I can find it out!





There are different jobs at the hospital. People can be doctors, nurses, surgeons, and caregivers.

يوجد العديد من الوظائف داخل المستشفى. يمكن أن يكون الناس أطباء وممرضات وجراحين ومقدمى الرعاية.

*caregivers مقدمى الرعاية











STUDY

Lesson 1

## They didn't come to the club!

Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

### Main Vocabulary



earache ألم الأذن



toothache ألم الأسنان



cold إنفلونزا (برد)



cough كحة



sore throat التهاب الحلق



backache ألم بالظهر



headache صداع

### Parts of the body that hurt: أجزاء من الجسم التى تؤلمنا:



ankle كاحل



back ظهر



shoulder كتف



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن الحروف (ach) تنطق /eIk/ كما فى (toothache, earache).
- لاحظ أن حرفى (gh) ينطقان /f/ كما فى كلمة (cough).

**Vocabulary Check**

- ear + ache = earache
- tooth + ache = toothache

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| club | نادى | problems | مشاكل |
| cousin | ابن العم أو الخال | aunt | خالة / عمة |
| dentist | طبيب أسنان | coach | كابتن /مدرب |
| stomach | معدة | | |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular verbs | | | أفعــال منتظمــة | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
| stay | يبقى | stayed | hope | يتمنى | hoped |
| **Irregular verbs** | | | **أفعــال غير منتظمــة** | | |
| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
| hurt | يؤذى/ يؤلم | hurt | think | يعتقد | thought |
| tell | يخبر | told | feel | يشعر | felt |

## Expressions and Phrases

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| have a good day | يقضى يومًا سعيد | football practice | تدريب كرة القدم |
| be careful | كن حذرًا | stay home | يبقى بالمنزل |
| feel better | يتحسن | worried about | قلق بشأن |
| I hope so! | أتمنى ذلك! | | |

**Parents' tips**

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.







**Listen, read, and role-play:** استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

### How does Fares feel today?



**Mom**: Hi Fares! Did you have a good day at the club?
أهلًا فارس! هل حظيت بيوم جيد فى النادى؟



**Fares**: Not really. Only five people came to the club today!
إلى حد ما. جاء خمسة أشخاص فقط إلى النادى اليوم!



**Mom**: Oh no! Are they OK?
أوه لا ! هل هم بخير؟





**Fares**: No, they have problems. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. And Amr has an earache from swimming.
لا، لديهم مشاكل. صديقى طارق أذى كاحله فى تدريب كرة القدم فى الليلة الماضية. وعمرو لديه ألم فى أذنه من السباحة.

**Mom**: What about your cousin Lama? Your aunt said she had a toothache.
ماذا عن ابنة خالتك لمى ؟ قالت خالتك إنها كان لديها ألم بالأسنان.





**Fares**: No, she wasn't there. I think she went to the dentist. Two of my friends have a cold. The coach told us to be careful. When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home!
لا، لم تكن هناك. أعتقد أنها ذهبت إلى طبيب أسنان. كان اثنان من أصدقائى لديهم برد. أخبرنا المدرب أن نكون حذرين. عندما يكون لدينا كحة أو ألم بالحلق. يجب أن نبقى فى المنزل.



Mom: How do you feel?
كيف تشعر؟

Fares: Well, I have a backache and I'm worried about my friends. I hope they'll feel better tomorrow.
حسنًا، لدى ألم بالظهر وقلق على أصدقائى. أتمنى أن يشعروا بتحسن غدًا.

Mom: I hope so, too!
أتمنى ذلك، أيضًا!

## Language Functions

Asking if someone's fine: السؤال عما إذا كان شخص ما بخير:

Are they OK?


e.g. A: Are they OK?
B: No, they have problems.

Parents' tips
Help your child listen to the dialog using the QR code and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her classmates.
ساعد طفلك فى الاستماع إلى المحادثة باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.



PRACTICE 

# Lesson 1




• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

My name is Adel. Yesterday, my friend Ramy didn't come to school. He was ill. I asked him if he hurt his shoulder or ankle. He said no. I asked him again if he had a headache. He said no. I asked him if he had an earache. He said no. Then he told me that he had a cough and a sore throat. I told him to drink some milk and honey. He told me that his mom called the doctor. They went to the doctor's and he feels fine today.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. Ramy didn't come to .................... yesterday.
   a) work b) hospital c) school d) home
2. Ramy is Adel's .................... .
   a) brother b) friend c) cousin d) grandfather

**B Answer the following questions:**

3. What did Adel tell Ramy to do? ....................
4. What is the general idea of the text? ....................

## 2 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: 2

1. I think i have a toothache
....................
2. what is the matter
....................



## 3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on " My friend is sick" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المعطاة: 5

go to school – milk and honey

....................
....................
....................
....................

Parents' tips
(1) Help your child read the text and answer.
(2) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.
(3) Help your child write about the given topic.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن الموضوع المعطى.



# TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 1





13

## Listening

4

**1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):** استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

1 Ahmed doesn't go to school every day. ( )

2 Ahmed felt very ill. ( )

3 Ahmed hurt his ankle at the football practice. ( )

4 Ahmed went to the dentist. ( )

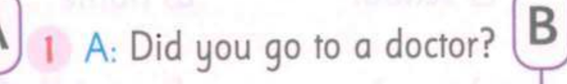


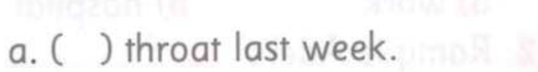
## Reading

5

**2 Read and match (A) with (B):** اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):







| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 A: Did you go to a doctor? | a. ( ) throat last week. |
| 2 Tarek had a sore ... | b. ( ) I have to go to the dentist. |
| 3 I need some milk ... | c. ( ) B: Yes, she does. |
| 4 I think I have a toothache. | d. ( ) B: No, I didn't. |
| 5 A: Does she have a headache? | e. ( ) and honey for my cough. |
| | f. ( ) Yes, he doesn't. |



## Writing

4

**3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:** أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة:

1 have – a – headache – Do – you? ..........................................

2 of – friends – my – have – a cold – Two. ..........................................

3 I – milk – some – Can – honey – and – have? ..........................................

4 I – a – toothache – don't – No, – have. ..........................................



| Assess your progress | < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ★★★★★ | Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |



# STUDY



Lesson 2

SCIENCE





## Water



**Listen, point, and say:** استمع، أشر وقل:



glacier
نهر جليدى



lake
بحيرة



river
نهر



ocean
محيط



stream
مجرى نهر



Mediterranean sea
البحر المتوسط

We should drink 8 glasses of fresh water a day.
يجب أن نشرب ٨ أكواب من الماء العذب يوميًا.



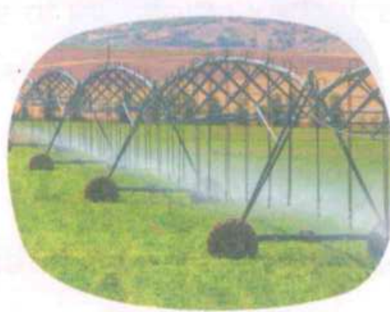
**Tip!** Salt water can also be called sea water. It is the water in seas and oceans.
يمكن تسمية المياه المالحة بمياه البحر. إنها الماء فى البحار و المحيطات.

**Parents' tips**
Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.

## Look and read: أنظر واقرأ:

### Usages of fresh water
استخدامات المياه العذبة


bathwater
ماء الاستحمام


water for crops
مياه لرى المحاصيل


drinking water
مياه الشرب

### Usages of salt water
استخدامات المياه المالحة



The Red Sea
البحر الأحمر




**Parents' tips**
Help your child listen and understand the usages of fresh and salt water after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويفهم استخدامات المياه العذبة والمياه المالحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام الـ QR code.





# Describing The Elephant

## Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

### Main Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| blind (adj.) | أعمى (كفيف) | trunk | جذع | flexible (adj.) | مرن |
| tusk | ناب | spear | حربة / رمح | rope | حبل |

### Extra vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| incredible (adj.) | مدهش | different (adj.) | مختلف | enormous (adj.) | ضخم |
| smooth (adj.) | أملس / ناعم | dangerous (adj.) | خطير | flat (adj.) | مسطح |
| hard (adj.) | صلب | moment | لحظة | huge (adj.) | ضخم |

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular verbs | | | أفعـال منتظمة | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
| touch | يلمس | touched | discover | يكتشف | discovered |
| reach | يصل | reached | turn | يلتف | turned |
| **Irregular verbs** | | | **أفعال غير منتظمة** | | |
| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
| meet | يقابل | met | say | يقول | said |
| hear | يسمع | heard | see | يرى | saw |

### Expressions and Phrases

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| look like | يشبه | walked over | مشى باتجاه |
| each of you | كل شخص منكم | stop for a moment | يتوقف للحظة |

### Definitions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| blind | أعمى | can't see | لا يرى |
| trunk | خرطوم الفيل | the very long nose of an elephant | أنف الفيل الطويلة |
| tusk | ناب | a very long pointed tooth | سن مدبب طويل للغاية |
| spear | حربة / رمح | a long pointed stick | عصا طويلة مدببة |

**Parents' tips**
Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.

## Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

### The beginning

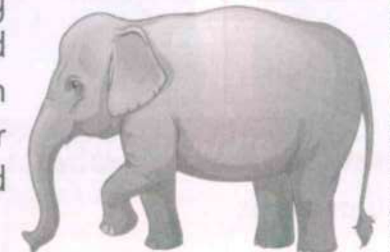
1 A long time ago, there were six blind[1] men who wanted to meet an elephant. They had heard many stories about these incredible animals, but each man had a different idea[2] about what the elephant would look like.



| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | أعمى (كفيف) |
| (2) | فكرة |

### The middle

2 One day, a local[3] farmer was walking along the road with an elephant that worked on his farm. The farmer asked if the men would like to touch the elephant to discover how it looks. The men were very excited and walked over to the enormous animal.



| | |
|---|---|
| (3) | محلى |
| (4) | مرن |
| (5) | ناب |
| (6) | حربة / رمح |
| (7) | حبل |

The first man touched the side of the elephant. He said, "It's very tall and very strong. It's like a wall!"

The second man put his arms around the elephant's back leg. He said, "No, you're wrong! It's round and strong, like a tree trunk!"

When the third man put his hand on the elephant's trunk, he said, "You're both wrong! The elephant is long and flexible[4]... it's just like a snake!"

The fourth man put his fingers against the elephant's tusk[5]. He said, "It's hard, long, and smooth. I think it's dangerous like a spear[6]!"

The fifth man was very, very tall. He reached out and touched the elephant's ear. He said, "This elephant is smooth and flat, and shaped just like a leaf!"

Finally, the sixth man put his hand on the elephant's tail. He said, "This elephant is not like a wall, a spear, or a snake. He's not like a leaf or tree trunk! This elephant is just like a rope[7]!"

### The end

3 The farmer listened to everything the men said. He turned to them and said, "In fact, you're all correct! Each of you only touched one part of the elephant. If you stop for a moment, and listen to what you all think, you can all see what the elephant looks like."

**Parents' tips**

Help your child read the story correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة بطريقة صحيحة.

**الترجمة:**

- منذ زمن بعيد، كان هناك ستة رجال مكفوفين يريدون مقابلة فيل. لقد سمعوا العديد من القصص عن هذه الحيوانات المدهشة، لكن كل رجل لديه فكرة مختلفة عما سيبدو عليه الفيل.
- في أحد الأيام، كان مزارع محلى يسير بجانب الطريق مع فيل كان يعمل في مزرعته. سأل المزارع عما إذا كان الرجال يرغبون في لمس الفيل ليستكشفوا كيف يبدو. كان الرجال متحمسين للغاية ومشوا نحو الحيوان الضخم.
- لمس الرجل الأول جانب الفيل. قال «إنه طويل جدًا وقوى جدًا. إنه مثل الجدار!»
- وضع الرجل الثانى ذراعيه حول ساق الفيل الخلفية. قال: «لا أنت مخطىء! إنه مستدير وقوى مثل جذع الشجرة!»
- عندما وضع الرجل الثالث يده على ناب الفيل قال: «أنتم الاثنان مخطئان! الفيل طويل ومرن... إنه مثل الثعبان تمامًا!»
- وضع الرجل الرابع أصابعه على ناب الفيل. قال: «إنه صلب وطويل وأملس. أعتقد أنه خطير مثل الرمح!»
- كان الرجل الخامس طويلًا جدًا جدًا. مد يده ولمس أذن الفيل وقال: «هذا الفيل أملس ومسطح وشكله مثل ورقة الشجر تمامًا!»
- أخيرًا، وضع الرجل السادس يده على ذيل الفيل. قال: «هذا الفيل ليس كحائط، رمح، أو ثعبان. إنه ليس كورقة شجر أو جذع شجرة! هذا الفيل تماما كالحبل!»
- أستمع المزارع إلى كل ما قاله الرجال. التفت إليهم وقال: في الحقيقة، كل شىء صحيح! لمس كل واحد منكم جزءًا واحدًا فقط من الفيل. إذا توقفتم للحظة، واستمعتم إلى ما تعتقدونه جميعًا، سيمكنكم رؤية شكل الفيل جميعًا.








# Lesson 2




• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):




| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 We should drink ... | a. ( ) to water the crops. |
| 2 The elephant's back leg is ... | b. ( ) bath water. |
| 3 A tusk is a ... | c. ( ) sea water. |
| 4 We use fresh water ... | d. ( ) 8 glasses of fresh water a day. |
| 5 Salt water can also be called ... | e. ( ) round and strong. |
| | f. ( ) long pointed tooth. |

## 2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة:




1 is – the – men – What – special – about?

..........................................................................................

2 we – drink – water – the – Can – sea?

..........................................................................................

3 six – very – excited – men – The – were.

..........................................................................................

4 drink – fresh – 8 – I – of – water – glasses.

..........................................................................................

## 3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:




1 do you like drinking water

..........................................................................................

2 which part of the elephant was like a snake

..........................................................................................

**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child read and match.
(2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.
(3) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.

# TEST YOURSELF on Lesson 2



## Listening

15

**1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):** استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ): 4

1. They went to the zoo. ( )
2. He has three brothers. ( )
3. Their favorite animal is the lion. ( )
4. Hossam wanted to know how the elephant looks like. ( )

## Reading

**2 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

I'm Sami. Yesterday, I read a story called "Describing the elephant". It was about three blind men who wanted to meet an elephant. Each man of them had a different idea about how the elephant would look like. They tried to touch an elephant to discover how it looks like. The first one said, "It's very tall and strong." The second one said, "The elephant is long and flexible." The third one said, "It's hard, long, and smooth." They saw it differently because each one of them touched a different part of the elephant.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. The story was about .................... blind men.
   a) two b) four c) five d) three
2. The underlined word 'blind' means someone who can't .................... .
   a) draw b) hear c) touch d) see

**B Answer the following questions:**

3. What did Sami do yesterday? ....................
4. Why did the three men see the elephant differently? ....................

## Writing

**3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Different types of water" using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المعطاة: 5

* What can we use fresh water for?
* Where can we find salt water?

....................................................................................

....................................................................................

| Assess your progress ★★★★★ | < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |







# STUDY Lesson 3







**Listen, point, and say:** استمع، أشِر وقل:

### Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| stomachache | ألم في المعدة | playground | ملعب | Bangalore | بنغالور(مدينة في الهند) |
| Southern India | جنوب الهند | patients | المرضى | crowded (adj.) | مزدحم |
| instead of | بدلًا من | staff | طاقم العمل | | |

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular verbs | | | أفعـــال منتظمة | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |

| Regular verbs | | أفعال منتظمة | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Present** | | **Past** | **Present** | | **Past** |
| treat | يعالج | treated | return | يعود / يرجع | returned |
| **Irregular verbs** | | **أفعال غير منتظمة** | | | |
| **Present** | | **Past** | **Present** | | **Past** |
| tell | يخبر / يقول | told | give | يعطى | gave |

### Expressions and Phrases

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| What is the matter? | ما الأمر؟ | Don't worry. | لا تقلق . |
| I have a cut on my arm. | لدى قطع في ذراعى | put a bandage | يضع ضمادة (لاصقة طبية) |

**Parents' tips**
Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.



# HOW ARE YOU?

## Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



**Ashraf:** Hello, Doctor. I don't feel well.
أهلًا، يا دكتور . أنا لا أشعر أننى بحالة جيدة .





**Doctor:** What's the matter, Ashraf? Do you have a headache?
ماذا بك، يا أشرف؟ هل لديك صداع؟



**Ashraf:** No, Doctor. I don't have a headache.
لا، يا دكتور. ليس لدى صداع.



**Doctor:** Do you have a stomachache?
هل لديك ألم فى المعدة؟



**Ashraf:** No, Doctor. I don't have a stomachache.
لا، يا دكتور، ليس لدى ألم فى المعدة.



**Doctor:** Do you have a toothache?
هل لديك ألم فى الأسنان؟



**Ashraf:** No, Doctor. I don't have a toothache. I have ... I have ... Achoo!
لا، يا دكتور. ليس لدى ألم فى الأسنان. أنا عندى .. أنا عندى...



**Doctor:** Oh, dear! You have a cold. Stay home, sleep well, and take this medicine.
أوه، عزيزى! لديك نزلة برد. أبقَ فى المنزل، ونم جيدًا وتناول هذا الدواء.



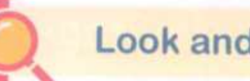
**Parents' tips**

Help your child listen to the dialog using the QR code, and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her classmates.

ساعد طفلك فى الاستماع إلى المحادثة باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code، ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.







## Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

### A Special Hospital

In a hospital in Bangalore, a city in southern India, there are many patients. The hospital treats patients from all over the country. With every patient, there are about ten family members[1]. In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone. Family usually go with their unwell relative[2].

This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy. But instead of telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital do something special. They turn a problem into something wonderful. They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages[3] and others learn how to give injections[4]. Each afternoon, staff from the hospital turn the corridors[5] into classrooms. The nurses become teachers and the family members – and sometimes even the patients – become the students. Not only does this help the hospital staff, but it also helps the families to care for their relatives when they go home. The staff know that the lessons work because not as many patients return to the hospital now.

(1) أفراد العائلة
(2) قريبهم المريض
(3) ضمادات
(4) حُقن
(5) ممرات

### Check point

1. Why is the hospital very crowded and busy?
   ..........................................................................
2. How do the hospital staff turn the problem into something wonderful?
   ..........................................................................

**Parents' tips**

Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:

- فى مستشفى فى بنغالور، مدينة فى جنوب الهند، هنالك الكثير من المرضى. يعالج المستشفى المرضى من جميع أنحاء البلاد.
- مع كل مريض هناك حوالى عشرة أفراد من العائلة. فى الهند ليس من المألوف/ العادى أن يذهب شخص إلى المستشفى وحده/ بمفرده. عادة ما تذهب العائلة مع قريبهم المريض.
- هذا يعنى أن المستشفى غالبًا ما يكون مزدحمًا ومشغولًا للغاية. ولكن بدلًا من أخبار أفراد الأسرة بأنهم لا يستطيعون زيارة أقاربهم المرضى، فريق العاملين بالمستشفى يفعلون شيئًا مميزًا. إنهم يحولون المشكلة إلى شىء رائع. لديهم فصول لتعليم العائلة كيفية رعاية الشخص المريض. على سبيل المثال، يتعلم بعض الأشخاص كيفية تغيير الضمادات ويتعلم اخرون كيفية إعطاء الحقن.
- بعد ظهر كل يوم، يقوم موظفو المستشفى بتحويل الممرات إلى فصول دراسية. تصبح الممرضات معلمات وأفراد العائلة - وأحيانًا حتى المرضى يصبحون طلابًا. هذا لا يساعد فقط العاملين بالمستشفى، ولكنه أيضًا يساعد العائلات على رعاية قريبهم عند عودته إلى البيت. يعرف الموظفون أن الدروس تعمل لأنه ليس كثيرًا من المرضى يعودون إلى المستشفى الآن.

# Language Focus



## Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشِر وقل:

We use "have" to talk about illnesses:

نستخدم "لدى" للحديث عن الأمراض:

### Affirmative: الإثبات

I/ You/ We/ They / فاعل جمع + have + a/an illness (مرض).



e.g. I have a headache.

(أنا) لدى صداع.

He/ She/ It / فاعل مفرد + has + a/an illness (مرض).



e.g. Hana has a cold.

هنا لديها برد.



### Yes/ No Question: السؤال بـ هل:

A: Do / Does + subject + have + a/an illness (مرض)?

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| B: Yes, | subject | do / does. |
| B: No, | | don't / doesn't. |





e.g.

A: Does she have a toothache? هل لديها ألم بالأسنان؟

B: No, she doesn't. لا، ليس لديها ألم بالأسنان.

**Parents' tips**

Help your child use "have" to talk about illness in the present correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم "لدى" للتحدث عن المرض في المضارع بطريقة صحيحة.





### Negative: النفي

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| I/ You/ We/ They | don't | have + a/an illness. |
| He/ She/ It | doesn't | |



e.g. I don't have a sore throat.

ليس لدى التهاب فى الحلق.

### Prefix un-

We can add the prefix un- to make the opposite of an adjective.

نضيف المقطع (-un) لنكون المضاد من الصفة.

un + صفة

e.g.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| usual | عادى | unusual | غير عادى |
| well | بخير | unwell | ليس بخير |

- We add ir-, il-, and im- to some adjectives.

- نضيف -ir- , il- , im لبعض الصفات:

| Prefix | Use | Root word | Opposite word |
|---|---|---|---|
| ir | when the word begins with r | responsible مسئول | irresponsible غير مسئول |
| il | when the word begins with l | legal قانونى | illegal غير قانونى |
| im | when the word begins with m or p | possible محتمل / ممكن | impossible غير محتمل / غير ممكن |
| | | moral أخلاقى | immoral غير أخلاقى |

### Check point

**Read and correct the underlined mistakes:** اقرأ وصحح ما تحته خط:

1 Talking on your cell phone while driving is legal. ..........

2 I won the game. I feel unhappy. ..........

3 It's possible to jump that high, it's very dangerous. ..........

**Parents' tips**

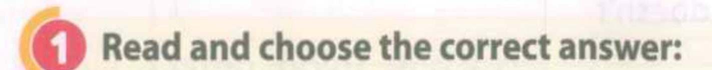
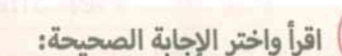
Help your child use the prefix correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم البادئة بطريقة صحيحة.




# Lesson 3

10

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة 4



1. Ahmed (has – does – have – is) a toothache.
2. The hospital staff turn the corridors of the hospital into (parks – classrooms – kitchens – gardens).
3. You are a very (irresponsible – illegal – impossible – responsible) person. You take care of your little brother.
4. (Do – Done – Does – Doesn't) you have a stomachache?

## 2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة 4



1. have – Do – a – Adel – stomachache, – you?

.................................................................................................

2. many – the – There – patients – are – hospital – in.

.................................................................................................

3. is – very – hospital – busy – and – The – crowded.

.................................................................................................

4. medicine – this – home – and – take – Stay.

.................................................................................................

## 3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: 2



1. What's the matter, ashraf

.................................................................................................

2. i have a headache

.................................................................................................

**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child read and choose. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار.

(2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.

(3) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.





# TEST YOURSELF on Lesson 3



14

### Listening

## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ): 4



1. Bangalore is a city in western India. ( )
2. The hospital is very crowded and busy. ( )
3. The hospital teaches strangers how to look after a sick person. ( )
4. The teachers teach patients' relatives how to give injections and change bandages. ( )



### Reading

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): 5

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1. He has a cold. | a. ( ) busy in Bangalore. |
| 2. The hospitals are crowded and ... | b. ( ) He's unwell. |
| 3. A: Do you have a headache? | c. ( ) from all over the country. |
| 4. Ola is sad. | d. ( ) It's unusual. |
| 5. The hospital treats patients ... | e. ( ) B: No, I don't. I have a toothache. |
| | f. ( ) She's unhappy. |



### Writing

## 3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "A visit to the hospital" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المعطاة 5



many patients – change bandages

.................................................................................................

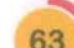
.................................................................................................

.................................................................................................



Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |






# Lesson 4





## The Power of Honey



### Listen and say: استمع وقل:

**Main vocabulary**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| perhaps | ربما / يمكن | treatment | علاج | injuries | إصابات |
| illnesses | أمراض | wounds | جروح | recently | حديثًا (مؤخرًا) |
| bacteria | بكتيريا | substance | مادة | | |

**Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال**

| Regular verbs | | | أفعـــال منتظمـة | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
| enjoy | يستمتع بـ | enjoyed | heal | يشفي | healed |
| treat | يعالج | treated | kill | يقتل | killed |
| **Irregular verbs** | | | **أفعال غير منتظمة** | | |
| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
| know | يعرف | knew | cut | يقطع / يجرح | cut |

### Definitions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| treatment | علاج | medical care to help you get better | الرعاية الطبية لمساعدتك على التحسن |
| wound | جرح | an injury that damages your skin | إصابة تتلف جلدك |
| bacteria | بكتيريا | very small things that can make you ill | أشياء صغيرة جدًا تصيبك بالمرض |
| heal | يشفي | to get better | أن تصبح أفضل |

**Parents' tips**

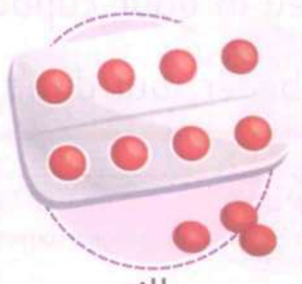
Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.





### Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

| Health Problems مشاكل صحية | Solution الحل |
|---|---|
|  sore throat التهاب الحلق |  honey and lemon عسل وليمون |
|  a cut knee جرح بالركبة |  bandage ضمادة |
|  sunburn حرق شمسي |  sunscreen كريم واقٍ من الشمس |
|  headache صداع |  pills أقراص / حبوب |

**Parents' tips**

Help your child identify some health problems and solutions correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على بعض المشاكل الصحية والحلول بطريقة صحيحة.



## Look and read: انظر و اقرأ:



| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | علاج |
| (2) | إصابات |
| (3) | جروح |
| (4) | بكتيريا |

Do you like honey? Perhaps you enjoy eating it for breakfast. Or maybe you enjoy it in a sweet basbousa? But did you know that honey isn't only a food? It is also used as a **treatment**[1] for some **injuries**[2] and illnesses.

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat **wounds**[3] by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Recently, scientists have tried to find out exactly why honey is so good for healing wounds and treating illnesses. Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill **bacteria**[4]. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment. So, if you have a jar of honey in your cupboard, you can mix it with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your cut knee!

**Parents' tips**

Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

**الترجمة:**

- هل تحب العسل؟ ربما تستمتع بتناوله على الإفطار. أو ربما تستمتع به فى البسبوسة الحلوة؟ لكن هل تعلم أن العسل ليس طعامًا فقط؟ كما أنه يستخدم أيضًا كعلاج لبعض الجروح والأمراض.
- فى بعض البلدان، استخدم الأطباء العسل لآلاف السنين. تم استخدامه لأول مرة لعلاج الجروح من قِبل الأطباء المصريين منذ حوالى ٥٠٠٠ سنة. فى الآونة الأخيرة، حاول العلماء معرفة سبب وجود العسل بالتحديد لماذا العسل جيد جدًا فى شفاء الجروح وعلاج الأمراض.
- يعلم العلماء أن بعض أنواع العسل تحتوى على الأشياء التى يمكن أن تساعد فى قتل البكتيريا. وهذا يساعد على شفاء الجروح بشكل أسرع. يجب أن تكون حذرا، ومع ذلك العسل الذى يستخدمه الأطباء هو عسل الأطباء الخاص وهو آمن للاستخدام كعلاج. لذا، إذا كان لديك وعاء من العسل فى خزانتك، يمكنك مزجه مع الحليب لجعل كحتك / سعالك أفضل، لكن لا تضعه على جرح بالركبة!





# Pronunciation

## Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

### /f/

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| frog ضفدع | scarf وشاح / كوفية | fruit فاكهة |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ferry معدية | few قليل | safe آمن | life حياة |
| fan مروحة | leaf ورقة شجر | fast سريع | fine جيد |

# /v/




**Notes**

To make the /f/ sound, rest your top teeth on your lower lip. Blow, but don't use your voice.

لعمل الصوت /f/ أرح الأسنان العلوية على الشفاه السفلية ثم انفخ، ولكن لا تستخدم صوتك!

To make the /v/ sound, rest your top teeth on your lower lip. Blow, but do use your voice!

لعمل الصوت /v/ أرح الأسنان العلوية على الشفاه السفلية ثم انفخ، ولكن استخدم صوتك!

**Parents' tips**

Help your child listen to the words with /f/ and /v/ sounds using the QR code and let him/her say them correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات التى تحتوى على أصوات الـ /f/ و /v/ باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة.





# Math

## A bar chart

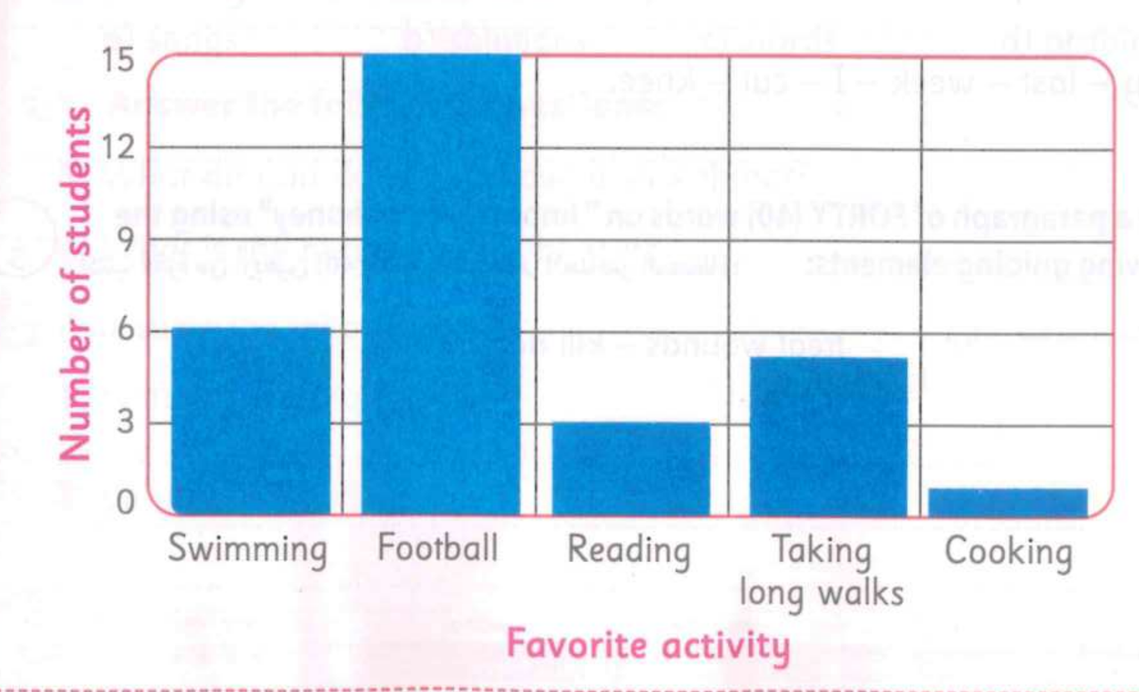
**Look, read, and notice:** أنظر، اقرأ، ولاحظ:

**A bar chart is a way of showing information.**

الرسم البيانى هو طريقة لعرض المعلومات.

Last week, 30 students were asked about their favorite free time activity to stay healthy. Here is the result of their survey. Which favorite activity was enjoyed by the biggest number of students?

| Favorite activity | Number of students |
|---|---|
| Swimming | 6 students |
| Football | 15 students |
| Reading | 3 students |
| Taking long walks | 5 students |
| Cooking | 1 student |




**Parents' tips**

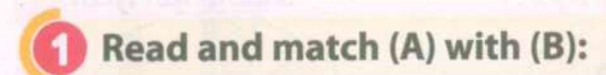
Help your child learn how to make a bar chart.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيفية عمل الرسم البيانى.




# Lesson 4


14


• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود ( أ ) بالعمود (ب): 5

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 Some types of honey ... | a. ( ) a way of showing information. |
| 2 "Heal" means ... | b. ( ) to treat wounds. |
| 3 Don't put honey ... | c. ( ) on your cut knee. |
| 4 A bar chart is ... | d. ( ) can kill bacteria. |
| 5 Honey was first used ... | e. ( ) to make someone feel ill. |
| | f. ( ) to get better. |




## 2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة 4

1. is – ferry – The – fast – very.
......................................................
2. a bandage – your – cut – knee – Put – on.
......................................................
3. good – for – Honey – wounds – healing – is.
......................................................
4. my – last – week – I – cut – knee.
......................................................





## 3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Importance of honey" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المعطاة 5

treat wounds – kill bacteria

......................................................
......................................................
......................................................
......................................................



**Parents' tips**
(1) Help your child read and match. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
(2) Help your child reorder the words to write correct sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة .
(3) Help your child write a paragraph correctly. ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرة بطريقة صحيحة.





# TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 4



### Listening 12

## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ): 4

1. Eman is a doctor and she works in a hospital. ( )
2. Honey is only food. ( )
3. Honey has been used by doctors for hundreds of years. ( )
4. Eman uses only doctors' special honey. ( )

### Reading

## 2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

I'm Asmaa. I'm a nurse. I work in a hospital. Yesterday, I taught my students some solutions to help their sick relatives. If a person has a sore throat, make for him honey and lemon. If someone is coughing, make for him honey and milk because honey can help treat illnesses. If a person has a cut knee, put a bandage on the cut. I enjoy teaching children and helping people.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. Asmaa is a ..........................
   a) doctor b) firefighter c) nurse d) teacher
2. She taught the students some ..........................
   a) songs b) solutions c) words d) problems

**B Answer the following questions:**

3. What do you do if you have a sore throat? ..........................
4. What is the main idea of the text? ..........................

## 3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 2

1. that's a very big ferry
......................................................
2. do you like honey
......................................................


Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |





# STUDY

# Lessons 5 & 6







## Writing

**Look and read:** أنظر واقرأ:

My presentation(1) today is about staying healthy(2). It is really important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet(3). There are lots of other things that we can do to look after(4) our health.

You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body moving. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way(5) to exercise.

Another thing you can do is to go to bed early(6). It's important to get enough(7) sleep. Experts(8) think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

In addition(9) to this, one of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends. It's not only your body that you need to keep healthy, you should make time to focus(10) on being happy, too. Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.



| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | عرض تقديمي |
| (2) | البقاء بصحة جيدة |
| (3) | نظام غذائي متوازن |
| (4) | يعتنى بـ |
| (5) | طريقة |
| (6) | مبكرًا |
| (7) | كافٍ |
| (8) | خبراء |
| (9) | بالإضافة |
| (10) | يركز |

**Parents' tips**

Help your child read the passage correctly.

.ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

**الترجمة:**

- عرضى التقديمى اليوم يتعلق بالبقاء بصحة جيدة. من المهم حقًا تناول الطعام. الأطعمة الصحية مثل الفاكهة والخضراوات واتباع نظام غذائى متوازن. وهناك العديد من الأشياء التى يمكننا القيام بها للعناية بأجسادنا.
- يجب عليك القيام ببعض التمارين كل يوم. من المهم جدًا إن تحافظ على تحرك جسمك. لعب الرياضة فى المدرسة أو مع الأصدقاء هو طريقة جيدة للتمرين.
- شىء آخر يمكنك القيام به وهو الذهاب إلى الفراش/السرير مبكرًا. من المهم أن تحصل على ما يكفى من النوم. يعتقد الخبراء أنك يجب أن تنام ما بين ثمانى إلى تسع ساعات كل ليلة.
- بالإضافة إلى ذلك، فإن أحد أفضل الطرق للبقاء بصحة جيدة هو قضاء الوقت مع أصدقائك. ليس جسمك فقط الذى تحتاج أن تبقيه بصحة جيدة. يجب أن تخصص وقتًا للتركيز على أن تكون سعيدًا أيضًا. قضاء الوقت مع العائلة و الأصدقاء طريقة رائعة للقيام بذلك.





## Project

**Listen, point, and say:** استمع، أشر وقل:



bandages
ضمادات





sunscreen
كريم واقٍ من الشمس



scissors
مقص





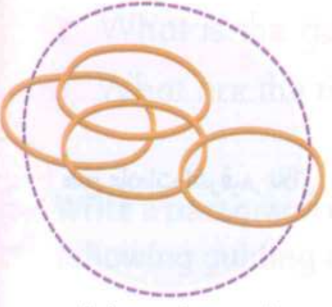
insect bite cream
كريم لدغة الحشرات



cleansing wipes
مناديل للتطهير



medical gloves
قفازات طبية



rubber bands
أربطة مطاطية



safety pins
دبابيس الأمان





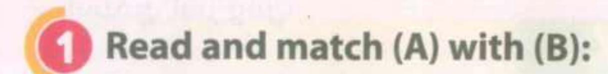
soap
صابون

**Parents' tips**

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك فى التعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.





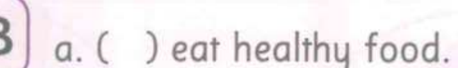
• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود ( أ ) بالعمود (ب): 5



**A**
1. I have a presentation today ...
2. It's important to ...
3. Experts think you should get ...
4. Bandages are useful ...
5. You should make time to focus ...

**B**
a. ( ) eat healthy food.
b. ( ) between eight and nine hours of sleep.
c. ( ) about staying healthy.
d. ( ) on being happy.
e. ( ) junk food.
f. ( ) in the first-aid kit.



## 2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4

1. have – a balanced – to – It's – important – diet.

.......................................................................................................

2. do – you – to – What – stay – do – healthy?

.......................................................................................................



3. bed – should – go – early – You – to.

.......................................................................................................

4. sports – way – Playing – exercise– to – is– a good.

.......................................................................................................

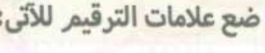
## 3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: 2

1. take bandages in case someone cuts his knee

.......................................................................................................

2. it's really important to eat healthy food

.......................................................................................................





**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child read and match. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
(2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.
(3) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.







**Listening** 15

## 1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

1. Salma is having a .................... today.
2. Salma's presentation is about staying .................... .
3. Mazen thinks it's important to have a .................... diet.
4. Salma says that getting enough .................... is also important.



**Reading**

## 2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6



My name is Omar. My presentation today is about staying healthy. It is really important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. There are lots of other things that we can do to look after our health. You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body moving. Playing sports at school or with friends is a good way to exercise. Another thing you can do is go to bed early.

### A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Omar's presentation is about staying ....................
   a) healthy b) sick c) ill d) unhealthy
2. It's really important to eat .................... food.
   a) junk b) fast c) healthy d) unhealthy

### B Answer the following questions:

3. What is the good way to exercise? ....................
4. What are the things we can do to look after our health? (Write two things).

.......................................................................................................

## 3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Staying healthy" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المعطاة: 5

plenty of water – exercise everyday

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................



Assess your progress

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |





# UNIT 8 REVIEW



## Vocabulary




**Parts of the body that hurt:**




## Pronunciation




## Language Focus

### The use of "have"

We use "have" in the present form to talk about illness:

**Affirmative:**

I/ You/ We/ They / فاعل جمع + have + a/an illness.

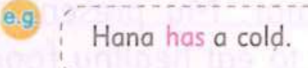
e.g.



I have a headache.

He/ She/ It / فاعل مفرد + has + a/an illness.

e.g.



Hana has a cold.



**Question:**

A: Do / Does + subject + have + a/an illness (مرض)?

| B: Yes, | subject | do / does. |
|---|---|---|
| B: No, | | don't / doesn't. |

e.g.



A: Does she have a toothache?
B: No, she doesn't.

### Prefix un-

We can add the prefix un- to make the opposite of an adjective.



e.g. usual → unusual

- We add ir-, il-, and im- to some adjectives.



e.g.

| Prefix | Use | Root word | Opposite word |
|---|---|---|---|
| ir | when the word begins with r | responsible | irresponsible |
| il | when the word begins with l | legal | illegal |
| im | when the word begins with m or p | possible | impossible |
| | | moral | immoral |



# UNIT 8 Check Your Vocabulary



## Lesson 1

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| كاحل | .................... | ظهر | .................... |
| صداع | .................... | إنفلونزا/ برد | .................... |
| كتف | .................... | ألم الأذن | .................... |
| ألم الأسنان | .................... | كحة | .................... |
| ألم بالظهر | .................... | التهاب الحلق | .................... |

## Lesson 2

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| نهر جليدى | .................... | بحيرة | .................... |
| مياه عذبة | .................... | محيط | .................... |
| نهر | .................... | مجرى نهر | .................... |
| أعمى | .................... | ناب | .................... |
| البحر المتوسط | .................... | حربة/ رمح | .................... |

## Lesson 4

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| وشاح/ كوفية | .................... | ورقة شجر | .................... |
| ضفدع | .................... | قليل | .................... |
| فاكهة | .................... | طبيب بيطرى | .................... |
| منظر | .................... | تلفاز | .................... |
| آمن | .................... | مروحة | .................... |
| جدًا | .................... | خضراوات | .................... |
| شاحنة صغيرة | .................... | حياة | .................... |
| معدية | .................... | يغادر | .................... |
| يوفر | .................... | حى/ يعيش | .................... |

# WRITING TIME

**"Day at the club"**

five friends – football practice

Only five people came to the club last night. Some of them weren't feeling well. Adel hurt his ankle at a football practice last night. Doha had an earache from swimming. I have a backache, too.

**"Elephants"**

* How big are the elephants?
* How do elephants' ears look like?

Elephants are enormous, strong, and special animals. Elephants' sides are very tall and they are like big strong walls. Elephants' legs are round and strong like tree trunks. Elephants' ears are smooth and flat like a leaf. Elephants' tusks are long, hard, and smooth just like dangerous spears. Elephants' trunks are long and flexible like a snake. Elephants' tails are just like a rope.

**"Water"**

take showers – sea water

Water is very important especially fresh water. We can't live without fresh water. We drink fresh water; we cook with fresh water and we water the crops with fresh water. We also take showers with fresh water. Fresh water is found in rivers, lakes, streams, and glaciers. There is also salt water that we also call it sea water. We can't drink salt water. It's dangerous to drink salt water. It's bad for the stomach.

**"The usage of honey"**

* Do you like honey?
* What do you use honey for?

I really like honey. I like to drink honey and milk, and sometimes honey and lemon when I cough, or when I have a sore throat. Some doctors use honey as a treatment for wounds. Doctors use a special kind of honey. Only doctors can use this special honey. Honey contains things that can help to kill bacteria and heal wounds.






# PRACTICE — More on Grammar 12



## 1 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1. Ola (is – has – have – did) a toothache.
2. Amira is feeling (unwell – fine – good – well). She has a headache.
3. (Doing – Are – Do – Does) you have an earache?
4. He's crying. He's (excited – unhappy – moral – responsible).



## 2 Read and correct the underlined mistakes: اقرأ وصحح ما تحته خط: 4

1. <u>Who's</u> the matter? ..........
2. It's <u>possible</u> for elephants to fly. ..........
3. She <u>have</u> a toothache. ..........
4. <u>Does</u> you have a cut knee? ..........



## 3 Read and rewrite the following: اقرأ وأعد كتابة الآتى: 4

1. Does she have a stomachache? (they)
..........
2. Do you have a backache? (No,)
..........
3. I have a toothache. (She)
..........
4. It's dangerous to walk in the middle of the road. (unsafe)
..........

**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child read and choose. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار.
(2) Help your child correct the underlined words. ساعد طفلك أن يصحح الكلمات التى تحتها خط.
(3) Help your child rewrite the given sentences or questions correctly. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد كتابة الجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة بطريقة صحيحة.

# UNIT 8 AL ADWAA TEST 30





## Listening

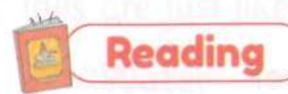
**1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):** استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ): 4

1. Malek is a doctor in a hospital in India. ( )
2. The hospital is empty. ( )
3. The doctors and nurses teach the patients' children. ( )
4. They teach patients' relatives how to change bandages and to give injections. ( )



**2 Listen and complete:** استمع وأكمل: 4

1. Mai feels very ..........................
2. Mai doesn't have a .......................... .
3. She has a .......................... throat.
4. She will drink .......................... and lemon.



## Reading



**3 Read and match (A) with (B):** اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): 5

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1. A hospital in Bangalore, India turns ... | a. ( ) a stomachache. |
| 2. "Bacteria" are ... | b. ( ) sea water. |
| 3. The elephant's ear is smooth, ... | c. ( ) the corridors into classrooms. |
| 4. Asmaa has ... | d. ( ) fresh water. |
| 5. Salt water can also be called ... | e. ( ) very small things that can make you ill. |
| | f. ( ) and flat, and shaped like a leaf. |



**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

We can't live without water. Water is very important. There are lots of places where we can find fresh water. We can find fresh water in rivers, lakes, streams, and glaciers. We use fresh water to drink, to water the crops, to take baths, and to cook food. Fresh water is important because we can't drink salt water. Salt water is also called sea water. Salt water is the water in seas and oceans. We swim in seas and oceans.





**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. We can't .......................... without water.
   a) breathe b) leave c) live d) left
2. The text is about .......................... .
   a) water b) honey c) illnesses d) salt

**B Answer the following questions:**

3. Where can we find fresh water? ..........................
4. Summarize the text in two sentences. ..........................

## Writing

**5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:** أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4

1. has – earache – an – Sama – and – a – toothache.
..........................
2. in – throw – illegal – It's – trash – the – to – rivers.
..........................
3. they – Do – a – stomachache – have?
..........................
4. is – friends – Spending – with – time – healthy.
..........................

**6 Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية: 2

1. do you have an earache
..........................
2. amira has a sore throat
..........................

**7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on " The power of honey" using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المعطاة: 5

treatment for some injuries – kill bacteria

..........................
..........................
..........................
..........................

Unit 9

# My favorite animal

# حيوانى المفضل

### Unit Overview

- **By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:**
  - listen, read, research, and write about animals.
  - listen and read about a trip to a wildlife park.
  - learn how to say /w/ and /v/ sounds.
  - write an email about an unusual animal.
  - research and make an infographic about animals in a habitat.

- **بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:**
  - يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن الحيوانات.
  - يستمع ويقرأ عن رحلة إلى حديقة الحيوانات البرية.
  - يتعلم كيف يقول أصوات /w/ و /v/.
  - يكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا عن حيوان غير عادى.
  - يبحث ويقوم بعمل رسم بيانى عن الحيوانات فى موطن المعيشة.

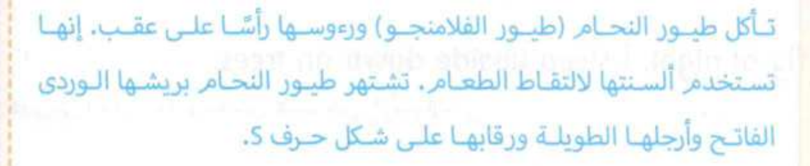
## Warm up

This unit is about different wildlife animals around the world. It's about the water cycle and the different processes that water goes through. It is also about the Ancient Egyptian society.

تتناول هذه الوحدة حيوانات برية مختلفة حول العالم. تتحدث عن دورة المياه. والعمليات المختلفة التى يمر بها المياه. إنها أيضًا عن المجتمع المصرى القديم.

### Did you know?

Flamingos eat with their heads upside down. They use their tongue to catch their food. Flamingos are famous for their bright pink feathers, tall legs, and S-shaped necks.



تأكل طيور النحام (طيور الفلامنجو) ورءوسها رأسًا على عقب. إنها تستخدم ألسنتها لالتقاط الطعام. تشتهر طيور النحام بريشها الوردى الفاتح وأرجلها الطويلة ورقابها على شكل حرف S.





### I can find it out!

Egypt is home to many animals such as camels, donkeys, horses, sheep, and goats as well as gazelles, desert lynxes, and desert foxes that mainly live in the desert areas.

تعد مصر موطنًا للعديد من الحيوانات مثل الجمال والحمير والخيول والأغنام والماعز وكذلك الغزلان ووشق الصحراء وثعالب الصحراء التى تعيش بشكل أساسى فى المناطق الصحراوية.



desert lynxes

STUDY



## Lesson 1
# Wildlife



## Main Vocabulary





**Listen, point, and say:** استمع، أشر وقل:

| Picture | Word | Sentence |
|---|---|---|
| | kangaroo<br>الكنغر | I live in Australia. I jump on two legs.<br>أنا أعيش فى أستراليا. أقفز على قدمين. |
| | panda<br>باندا | I live in China. I eat bamboo. I'm big, and black and white.<br>أنا أعيش فى الصين. أنا آكل الخيزران. أنا كبير، ولونى أسود وأبيض. |
| | bat<br>خفاش | I fly at night. I sleep upside down on trees.<br>أطير فى الليل. أنام رأسا على عقب على الأشجار. |
| | lion<br>أسد | I live in Africa. I'm a very big cat. I am very strong.<br>أنا أعيش فى إفريقيا. أنا قطة كبيرة جدًا. انا قوى جدًا. |
| | penguin<br>بطريق | I live on ice and snow. I'm black and white. I can swim, but I can't fly.<br>أنا أعيش على الجليد والثلج. لونى أسود وأبيض. يمكننى السباحة، لكن لا يمكننى الطيران. |
| | dolphin<br>دولفين | I am very friendly. I swim in a group with my family in the ocean.<br>أنا ودود جدًا. أنا أسبح فى مجموعة مع عائلتى فى المحيط. |
| | snail<br>حلزون | I live in the garden. I have a shell. I don't have legs or arms.<br>أنا أعيش فى الحديقة. لدى صدفة. ليس لدى أرجل أو أذرع. |
| | parrot<br>ببغاء | I am a bird. I am very beautiful and colorful. I live in the rainforest.<br>أنا طائر. أنا جميل جدًا وملون. أنا أعيش فى الغابة الاستوائية. |





## Extra vocabulary

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| wildlife الحياة البرية | shell صدفة | Australia أستراليا |
| rainforest الغابة الاستوائية | Africa إفريقيا | strong (adj.) قوى |
| friendly (adj.) ودود | ocean محيط | China الصين |
| bamboo نبات الخيزران | wonderful (adj.) رائع | awesome (adj.) رائع |
| pouch جراب | sweet (adj.) لطيف | fridge ثلاجة |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular verbs | | أفعــال منتظمــة | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Present | Past | Present | Past |
| stay يبقى / يمكث | stayed | repeat يكرر | repeated |
| **Irregular verbs** | | **أفعــال غير منتظمــة** | |
| Present | Past | Present | Past |
| can يستطيع | could | sit يجلس | sat |
| feed يطعم | fed | hide يختبئ | hid |

## Expressions and Phrases

| | |
|---|---|
| at night فى الليل | sleep upside down ينام رأسا على عقب |
| day out يوم بالخارج | do a project on يقوم بعمل بمشروع عن |



**Let's say it right!**

- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (c) فى كلمة (ocean) ينطق (ʃ) (ش).

### Vocabulary Check

- لاحظ أن (favorite) قد تأتى اسمًا مثل: My favorites were the parrots.
- وقد تأتى (favorite) صفة مثل: He saw his favorite birds.

**Parents' tips**

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.



## Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ و تبادل الأدوار:

### Where did Ramez go yesterday?



**Ramez:** Hi! I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family.

أهلا! أنا قضيت يومًا رائعًا في الخارج بالأمس مع عائلتي.





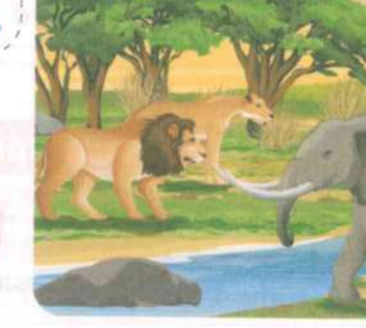
**Ayman:** Where did you go?

أين ذهبت؟



**Ramez:** I went to the new wildlife park – it was awesome!

ذهبت إلى حديقة الحيوانات البرية الجديدة - كانت رائعة!





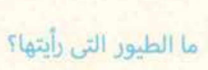
**Ayman:** What did you see? Could you go near the lions?

ماذا رأيت؟ هل تمكنت من الاقتراب من الأسود؟



**Ramez:** No, we stayed in the car. But we could see them through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting, too. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch – it's so sweet!

لا، بقينا في السيارة. لكن يمكننا رؤيتها من خلال الأشجار. كان الكنغر مثيرًا للاهتمام أيضًا. عندما يكون صغارًا ، يمكنها الجلوس داخل جراب أمهاتها - إنها لطيفة جدًّا!





**Ayman:** What birds did you see?

ما الطيور التي رأيتها؟







**Ramez:** Lots, but my favorites were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! We said some words for them to repeat!

كثيرا، لكن المفضلة لدي كانت الببغاوات. كانت جميلة جدًّا ويمكنها التحدث! قلنا لها بعض الكلمات ليكرروها!





**Ayman:** What about animals that like the cold? Did you see any?

ماذا عن الحيوانات التي تحب البرد؟ هل رأيت أيًّا منها؟

**Ramez:** Yes, penguins! They were in a special place inside. It was cold, like a fridge. We fed them some fish! I love penguins – they can swim so well and they look so cool!

نعم، البطاريق! كانت في مكان خاص بالداخل. كان المكان باردًا مثل الثلاجة. أطعمناها بعض الأسماك! أنا أحب البطاريق - يمكن أن تسبح جيدًا وتبدو رائعة جدًّا!



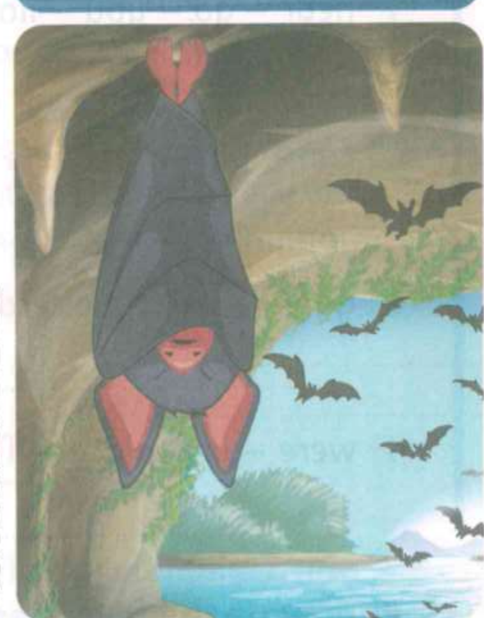


**Ayman:** Wow! Was there anything you wanted to see but couldn't?

رائع! هل كان هناك أي شيء أردت رؤيته ولكنك لم تستطع ذلك؟

**Ramez:** The bats. I'm doing a project on bats at school, so I really wanted to see them! But they were all hiding and I couldn't see them in the dark!

الخفافيش. أنا أقوم بعمل مشروع عن الخفافيش في المدرسة، لذلك أردت حقًّا رؤيتها! لكنها كانت جميعًا تختبئ ولم أستطع رؤيتها في الظلام!





**Ayman:** Oh well, it sounds amazing! I've got to feed my rabbit now – that's the most wildlife I'll see today!

أووه حسنًا ، يبدو الأمر رائعًا! يجب أن أطعم أرنبي الآن - هذه هي الحياة البرية التي سأراها اليوم!



**Parents' tips**

Help your child listen to the dialog using the QR code and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her classmates.

ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثة باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code، ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.




# Lessson 1

11

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5



| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 Snails have shells. | a. ( ) they sleep upside down on trees. |
| 2 Dolphins are friendly. | b. ( ) B: I went to the new wildlife park. |
| 3 Bats fly at night. | c. ( ) They don't have legs or arms. |
| 4 A: Where did you go? | d. ( ) some fish. |
| 5 We fed the penguins ... | e. ( ) They swim in a group in the ocean. |
| | f. ( ) They eat bamboo. |

## 2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

4



1 near – go – you – lions – Could – the?

......................................................................................................

2 can – but – Penguins – fly, – can't – they – swim.

......................................................................................................

3 go – Where – yesterday – Ramez – did?

......................................................................................................

4 were – in – place – The penguins – a special – inside.

......................................................................................................

## 3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2



1 What did you see ramez?

......................................................................................................

2 i'm doing a project on bats at school

......................................................................................................



**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child read and match. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.

(2) Help your child reorder the words to make correct sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات ليكون جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.

(3) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.





# TEST YOURSELF on Lesson 1



15

### Listening

## 1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

4

1 Ramez went to the .............................. park.

2 The kangaroos were .............................. .

3 Ramez's favorite birds are the .............................. .

4 The .............................. were in a special place.

### Reading

## 2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

Ramez went to the new wildlife park yesterday. He had a wonderful day out with his family. They stayed in the car. They could see the lions through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch. Ramez's favorite birds were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! The penguins were in a special place inside. It was cold, like a fridge. They fed them some fish. Penguins can swim so well and they look so cool.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 The text is about Ramez's family's visit to the .............................. .

a) square b) bank c) theater d) wildlife park

2 The underlined word "pouch" means a small place inside the body of the .......... .

a) parrot b) monkey c) penguin d) kangaroo

**B Answer the following questions:**

3 What were Ramez's favorite birds? ..............................

4 Where were the penguins? ..............................

### Writing

## 3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Wildlife animals" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

5

• How did you go to the wildlife park?
• What did you see there?

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |



## Lesson 2
# What could you do?



## Language Focus





Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

### Expressing ability and inability: التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة:

### 1 can / can't

**Usage:**

When we talk about something we are or aren't able to do in the present, we use (can) or (can't).

عندما نتحدث عن شيء نستطيع أو لا نستطيع القيام به في الوقت الحاضر ، فإننا نستخدم (can) أو (can't).

**Form:**

Subject + can/can't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ....



e.g. I can play basketball. أنا أستطيع أن ألعب كرة السلة.

e.g. Penguins can't fly. لا تستطيع البطاريق أن تطير.



**Question:**

To make questions, we change the order of the words (to start with Can).

لتكوين الأسئلة، نقوم بتغيير ترتيب الكلمات وتكون البداية بـ Can.

A: Can + subject + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ... ?

| B: Yes, | subject | can. |
|---|---|---|
| B: No, | | can't. |





e.g.

1 A: Can you play tennis? هل تستطيع أن تلعب التنس؟
B: Yes, I can. نعم ، أنا أستطيع.

2 A: Can she make a cake? هل هي تستطيع أن تصنع الكيك؟
B: No, she can't. لا، هي لا تستطيع.





Note: We use "can" or "can't" with the infinitive without "to".

- نستخدم "can" أو "can't" مع مصدر الفعل بدون "to".





### 2 could / couldn't

**Usage:**

When we talk about something we were or weren't able to do in the past, we use (could) or (couldn't).

عندما نتحدث عن شيء كنا قادرين أو غير قادرين على القيام به في الماضي، فإننا نستخدم could أو couldn't.

**Form:**

Subject + could/couldn't + (inf) مصدر الفعل ... .



e.g. When I was little, I could sit on my dad's knee.
عندما كنت صغيرة، كان بإمكاني الجلوس على ركبة والدي.

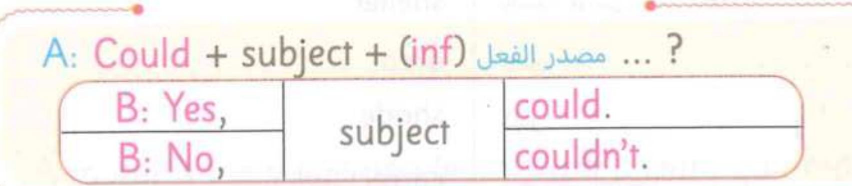


e.g. I couldn't take the bus so I had to walk.
لم أستطع ركوب الأتوبيس فاضطررت للمشي.

**Question:**

To make questions, we change the order of the words (to start with Could).

لتكوين الأسئلة ، نقوم بتغيير ترتيب الكلمات وتكون البداية بـ "Could".



A: Could + subject + (inf) مصدر الفعل ... ?

| B: Yes, | subject | could. |
|---|---|---|
| B: No, | | couldn't. |





e.g.

A: Could he speak when he was six months old?
B: Yes, he could say "mama" and "dada!".

A: Could you ride a bike when you were three?
B: No, I couldn't.



## Check point

**Read and choose the correct answer:** اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 When I was little, I (can – are – couldn't – can't) run fast.
2 Sorry, I (can – can't – could – am) help you with your homework. I'm busy now.
3 A: Could you (play – playing – played – plays) chess when you were a child?
B: Yes, I could.

**Vocabulary Check**

لاحظ أن أسماء اللغات والبلاد تبدأ بحرف كبير "capital letter":
(France / French – Italy / Italian – Germany / German – England / English).



# The travelers and the tree

by Aesop

## Main Vocabulary



**Listen, point, and say:** استمع، أشر وقل:



trunk of a tree
جذع شجرة



a branch of a tree
فرع شجرة



nuts
فول سوداني



exhausted
مرهق

### Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| travelers | مسافرون | dictionary | قاموس |
| fable | أسطورة | dry (adj.) | جاف |
| wide (adj.) | واسع / عريض | shelter | ملجأ |
| rest | راحة | area | منطقة |
| traders | تجار | shade | ظل |
| probably | ربما / من المحتمل | correct (adj.) | صحيح |
| unkind (adj.) | غير طيب / غير عطوف | humans | البشر |

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular verbs | | | أفعـــال منتظمــة |
|---|---|---|---|
| Present | Past | Present | Past |
| rest يستريح | rested | save ينقذ | saved |
| **Irregular verbs** | | | **أفعـــال غير منتظمــة** |
| Present | Past | Present | Past |
| wake up يستيقظ | woke up | feel يشعر | felt |

### Expressions and Phrases

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| move across | يتحرك عبر | fell asleep | نام |
| neither of them | لا أحد منهم | one of them | أحدهما |
| keep ... cool | يحافظ على برودة (شيء) | feel sorry | يشعر بالأسف |
| give value | يقدِّر / يعطي قيمة | | |





## Definitions

| | |
|---|---|
| breeze<br>نسيم | A breeze is a little wind.<br>النسيم هو ريح خفيفة. |
| useless<br>عديم الفائدة | When something is useless, we can't use it.<br>عندما يكون هناك شيء عديم الفائدة ، فلا يمكننا استخدامه. |
| ungrateful<br>جاحد (غير شكور) | When someone is ungrateful, they don't thank others for doing something good.<br>عندما يكون شخص ما جاحدًا (غير شكور)، فإنه لا يشكر الآخرين على فعلهم الجيد. |
| comfortable<br>مريح | When something is comfortable, it's nice to sit on or wear.<br>عندما يكون هناك شيء ما مريح ، فمن الجيد الجلوس عليه أو ارتداؤه. |
| meeting point<br>نقطة التقاء | is somewhere where people meet.<br>هو مكان حيث يتقابل الأشخاص. |





A moral is the value you learn from a story you read or from a situation in life.

الخلق (المغزى) هو القيمة التي تتعلمها من قصة تقرؤها أو من موقف في الحياة.

e.g. The moral of the story is that it's important to give value to the small things in our lives.

الدرس الأخلاقي «المغزى» من القصة هو أنه من المهم إعطاء قيمة للأشياء الصغيرة في حياتنا.



### Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حروف (tion) في كلمة (dictionary) تنطق /ʃ/ (ش).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (x) في كلمة (exhausted) ينطق /gz/ (جز) كما أن حرف الـ (h) حرف (silent) صامت لا ينطق.
- لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (th) في كلمة (neither) ينطقان /ð/ (ذ).

### Vocabulary Check

- لاحظ استخدام (un) و (less) تعطي العكس من الكلمة:

- grateful شكور / ungrateful جاحد (غير شكور) - useful مفيد / useless عديم الفائدة

## Look and read: انظر واقرأ

### The beginning

1

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk (1) was very wide and it had many green branches (2). It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave shelter (3) and rest (4) to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country. It was near four towns and many villages in its area and was a meeting point for traders.



| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | جذع |
| (2) | فروع |
| (3) | ملجأ |
| (4) | يستريح |

### The middle

2

One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said, "Let's stop under that tree, where there's some shade." "That's a very good idea," said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. They then enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze. As they were exhausted (5), they soon fell asleep. When they woke up, one of the travelers felt hungry. Neither of them had any food in their bags so they looked up at the branches of the tree. "This tree is useless," one of them said. "It has no food for us – there are no nuts (6) or fruit on its branches."

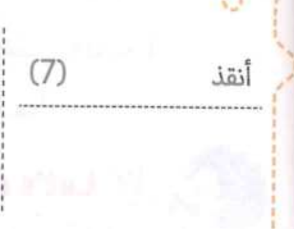
| | |
|---|---|
| (5) | مرهق |
| (6) | فول سوداني |

### The end

3

"But it has shade and it's keeping us cool," said the other. But the tree heard the first traveler's words and it was angry. "How can you be so ungrateful?" It said, "You came to me feeling hot and tired. I gave you a cool, comfortable place to sleep and I probably saved (7) your life. Look, there is no other cool place to sleep near here." The travelers looked around them and saw the tree was correct and felt very sorry.

| | |
|---|---|
| (7) | أنقذ |



**Parents' tips**

Help your child read the passage and understand the new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القطعة ويفهم الكلمات الجديدة.

الترجمة:

ذات مرة كانت هناك شجرة كبيرة قديمة جدًا في أرض حارة وجافة. لقد عاشت لسنوات عديدة. كان جذعها عريضًا جدًا وبه العديد من الأغصان الخضراء. كانت مشهورة لأنها كانت الشجرة الوحيدة التي عاشت حيثما كانت، وقد وفرت المأوى والراحة لمئات المسافرين أثناء تنقلهم عبر جميع أنحاء البلاد. كانت بالقرب من أربع مدن والعديد من القرى في منطقتها وكانت نقطة التقاء التجار.
في أحد الأيام، كان مسافران جديدان في المنطقة يمشيان عبر الحقل ورأيا الشجرة. كان يومًا حارًا وجافًا جدًا وقال أحدهم، «دعنا نتوقف تحت تلك الشجرة، حيث يوجد بعض الظل». قال له صديقه: «هذه فكرة جيدة جدًا». استراحا تحت الشجرة وشربوا بعض الماء. ثم استمتعوا بالظل والنسيم البارد. ولأنهما كانا مرهقين، سرعان ما ناما.
عندما استيقظا، شعر أحد المسافرين بالجوع. لم يكن لدى أي منهما طعامًا في حقائبها، فنظرا إلى أغصان الشجرة. "هذه الشجرة عديمة الفائدة." قال أحدها. «لا يوجد بها طعام لنا - لا توجد مكسرات أو فواكه على فروعها.» قال الآخر: «لكن لها ظل وهذا يجعلنا نشعر بالبرودة».
لكن الشجرة سمعت كلام المسافر الأول وكانت غاضبة. «كيف يمكنك أن تكون جاحدًا إلى هذا الحد؟» قالت، «أتيت إليّ وأنت تشعر بالحر والتعب. أعطيتك مكانًا رائعًا ومريحًا للنوم وربما أنقذت حياتك. انظرا، هناك لا يوجد مكان بارد آخر للنوم بالقرب من هنا». نظر المسافران حولهما ورأيا أن الشجرة كانت على حق وشعرا بالأسف الشديد.
* (Aesop) هو كاتب يوناني قديم له العديد من الأساطير المتداولة حتى اليوم. تعتبر أساطير إيسوب من أشهر القصص التي تتضمن دروسًا أخلاقية في التاريخ، ويتم استخدام العديد من الحكايات لتوجيه الأطفال فيما يتعلق بالمواضيع الأخلاقية ودروس الحياة.



PRACTICE

# Lesson 2




• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Listen and complete: استمع و أكمل: 4

Ayman : Hi, Ali ..................(1).................. you jump when you were three?
Ali : No, but I could walk.
Ayman : What else could you ..................(2).................. when you were young?
Ali : I could ..................(3).................. and run. What about you?
Ayman : I could ..................(4).................. French when I was younger.
Ali : Wow! That sounds amazing.

## 2 Read and correct the underlined words: اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط: 4

1. I like math. I couldn't solve math problems quickly now. (..................)
2. I can't swim when I was a baby. and everyone was amazed. SB (..................)
3. John was a clever child. He can't read when he was eight. (..................)
4. A: Could he walk when he was two? B: Yes, he can. (..................)

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4

1. soon – travelers – asleep – The – fell.

..............................................................................

2. say – anything – I – can't – German – in.

..............................................................................

3. under – tree – the – travelers – The – rested.

..............................................................................

4. read – Could – one – you – when – were – you?

..............................................................................

**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child listen and complete. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل.
(2) Help your child correct the underlined words. ساعد طفلك أن يصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.
(3) Help your child reorder the words to make correct sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات ليكون جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.



# TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 2



## Listening

14

**1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):** استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ): 4

1. Salma went to the desert last year. (..................)
2. They got lost in the desert. (..................)
3. They found a big lake. (..................)
4. They were ungrateful to the tree. (..................)



## Reading

**2 Read and match (A) with (B):** اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): 5

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1. I could speak French ... | a. ( ) They fell asleep. |
| 2. "Breeze" is ... | b. ( ) live in shells. |
| 3. Snails can ... | c. ( ) somewhere where people meet. |
| 4. They were exhausted. | d. ( ) we can't use it. |
| 5. "A meeting point" is ... | e. ( ) when I was five. |
| | f. ( ) a little wind. |





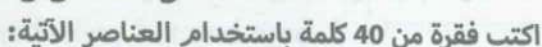
SB



## Writing

**3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "What you could do when you were younger" using the following guiding elements:** 5

اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:



could run – speak German

.....................................................................................

.....................................................................................

.....................................................................................



Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |



# STUDY



Lesson 3

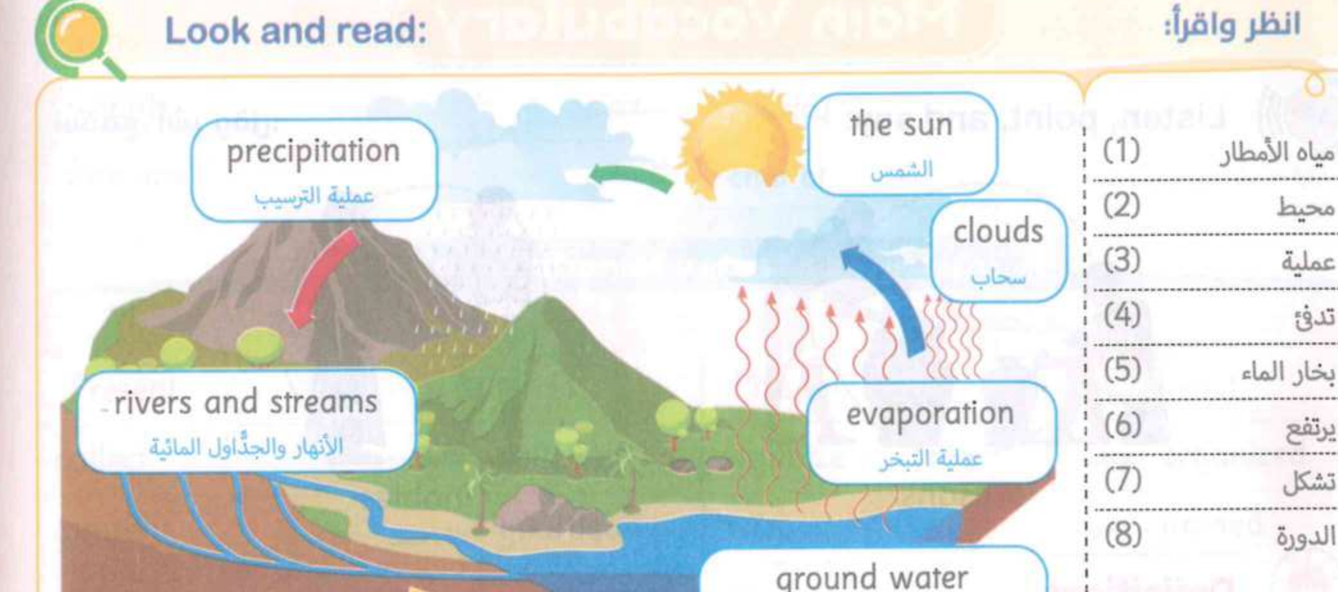
# Science



## The water cycle



**Look and read:** انظر واقرأ:





| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | مياه الأمطار |
| (2) | محيط |
| (3) | عملية |
| (4) | تدفئ |
| (5) | بخار الماء |
| (6) | يرتفع |
| (7) | تشكل |
| (8) | الدورة |

**Where does our water come from?**

Rain falls from clouds in the sky. Some rainwater (1) goes straight into the ground. But a lot of it goes into streams, rivers, lakes, and then the ocean (2). This process (3) is called precipitation.

Some of the rainwater changes – the sun warms (4) it and it becomes water vapor (5). This process is called 'evaporation'. We cannot see or smell the water vapor and it doesn't stay on the ground. It rises (6) in the air and, as it gets cooler high up in the sky, it changes back into water and forms (7) clouds. As the clouds become bigger, the water in them gets heavier.

When the water in the clouds gets heavier, it falls to the ground, and the cycle (8) starts again.

## Check point

1. Where does some rainwater go?

.....................................................................................

2. What is "evaporation"?

.....................................................................................

**Parents' tips**

Help your child read the passage and understand the new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القطعة ويفهم الكلمات الجديدة.

الترجمة:

من أين يأتى الماء لدينا؟

المطر يتساقط من السحب فى السماء. يذهب بعض من مياه الأمطار مباشرة إلى الأرض. لكن الكثير منها يذهب إلى الجدْاول والأنهار والبحيرات ثم المحيط. هذه العملية تسمى تساقط الأمطار.
تتغير بعض مياه الأمطار - فالشمس تدفئها وتتحول إلى بخار ماء، هذه العملية تسمى «التبخر». لا يمكننا رؤية أو شم بخار الماء ولا يبقى على الأرض، إنه يرتفع فى الهواء، وعندما يصبح أكثر برودة فى السماء، فإنه يتحول مرة أخرى إلى ماء ويتشكل سحاب. عندما تكبر الغيوم، يزداد الماء ثقلا بداخلها.
عندما تصبح المياه فى السحب أثقل، تسقط على الأرض، وتبدأ الدورة مرة أخرى.

# Social Studies

## Ancient Egyptian Society المجتمع المصرى القديم

## Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



artisans
حرفيون



nobles
نبلاء



### Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
|  | pharaoh فرعون | He ruled the country. كان هو من يحكم البلاد. |
|  | soldiers جنود | They kept ancient Egyptians safe. حافظوا على سلامة المصريين القدماء. |
|  | scribes كتبة | They wrote everything for the people. لقد كتبوا كل شيء للناس. |
|  | farmers مزارعون | They grew the food for everyone. لقد زرعوا الطعام للجميع. |
| | traders تجار | They bought and sold all the goods. قاموا بشراء وبيع جميع البضائع. |





### Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ancient (adj.) | قديم/أثرى | Egyptian (adj.) | مصرى |
| society | مجتمع | taxes | ضرائب |
| safe (adj.) | آمن | kingdom | مملكة |
| army | جيش | papyrus | نبات البردى |
| records | سجلات | jewelry | مجوهرات |
| furniture | أثاث | chariot | مركبة حربية |

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| collect | يجمع | collected | organize | ينظم | organized |
| guard | يحرس | guarded | train | يتدرب | trained |

### Expressions and Phrases

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| play an important role | يلعب دورًا هامًا | in charge | مسئول عن |
| rule the country | يحكم البلد | make into | يحول |
| well-organized | منظم جيدًا | | |

**Tip!** After you read a text, pick out some words you don't know and check them in a dictionary. Understanding them in the text will help you learn the words and remember them.

بعد قراءة النص ، اختر بعض الكلمات التى لا تعرفها وتحقق منها فى القاموس. سيساعدك فهمها فى النص على تعلم الكلمات وتذكرها.

 pharaoh – artisan – scribes

### Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (c) فى كلمة (ancient) ينطق /ʃ/ (ش).
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ph) فى كلمة (pharaoh) ينطقان /f/ (ف) كما ان حرف الـ (h) حرف (silent) صامت لا ينطق.
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (d) فى كلمة (soldier) ينطق /dʒ/ (دج).
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (tu) فى كلمة (furniture) ينطقان /tʃ/ (تش).

**Parents' tips**
Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.
ساعد طفلك فى التعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.

## Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | مسئول عن |
| (2) | النبلاء |
| (3) | الضرائب |
| (4) | الجيش |

Lots of different people played important roles in Ancient Egyptian society.

The person in charge [1] was the pharaoh. The pharaoh needed lots of people to help him. He worked closely with nobles, [2] and they looked after different things. The nobles collected taxes [3] and organized soldiers.



Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe. As Egypt was such an important and very rich country, the soldiers guarded the kingdom. The army [4] was strong, and the soldiers were good at their jobs.



Scribes were very important because they were usually the only people who could read and write. They trained for about 12 years before they wrote on papyrus. They wrote many different things like letters, records, and important papers. Without the scribes, we would know almost nothing about Ancient Egypt today.



Traders were the people who bought and sold everything in Ancient Egyptian society – food, clothes, jewelry, soldiers' uniforms, ships, and materials for building.



Artisans took the materials from the traders and made them into things for people to use, like furniture, chariots, and clothes. Farmers produced the food that was eaten by the pharaoh, the nobles, the soldiers, the scribes, the traders, and the artisans.

### Check point

1 Why were scribes important?

..............................................................................

2 What did artisans do?

..............................................................................

**Parents' tips**

Help your child read the passage and understand the new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويفهم الكلمات الجديدة.

**الترجمة:**

لعب الكثير من الأشخاص المختلفين أدوارًا مهمة فى المجتمع المصرى القديم. كان الشخص المسئول هو الفرعون. احتاج الفرعون إلى الكثير من الأشخاص لمساعدته فى إدارة البلاد. لقد عمل عن كثب مع النبلاء، وكانوا يعتنون بأشياء مختلفة. قام النبلاء بجمع الضرائب ونظموا الجنود.

كان الجنود مشغولين بالحفاظ على مصر آمنة؛ نظرًا لأن مصر كانت دولة مهمة وغنية جدًا، فقد حرس الجنود المملكة. كان الجيش قويا وأتقن الجنود مهامهم.

كان الكتبة مهمين للغاية لأنهم عادة ما كانوا الوحيدين الذين يستطيعون القراءة والكتابة. تدربوا لمدة ١٢ عامًا قبل أن يكتبوا على ورق البردى. لقد كتبوا أشياء كثيرة مختلفة مثل الرسائل والسجلات والأوراق المهمة. بدون الكتبة، لم نكن تقريبًا لنعرف شيئًا عن مصر القديمة اليوم.

التجار هم الأشخاص الذين اشتروا وباعوا كل شيء فى المجتمع المصرى القديم - الطعام والملابس والمجوهرات والزى العسكرى والسفن ومواد البناء.

أخذ الحرفيون المواد من التجار وصنعوا منها أشياء يستخدمها الناس، مثل الأثاث والمركبات الحربية والملابس. أنتج المزارعون الطعام الذى أكله الفرعون والنبلاء والجنود والكتبة والتجار والحرفيون.






# PRACTICE Lesson 3




• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

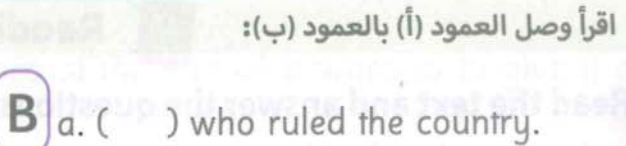
1 Scribes were the only people who could .............. everything for the people.

2 Scribes trained for about .................... years before they wrote on papyrus.

3 Scribes wrote many different things like letters, ..............., and important papers.

4 Without the scribes, we would know ................ about Ancient Egypt today.

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): 5



| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 The sun warms the rain and ... | a. ( ) who ruled the country. |
| 2 "Traders" are the people ... | b. ( ) it becomes water vapor. |
| 3 "Pharaoh"was the person ... | c. ( ) before they wrote on the papyrus. |
| 4 Scribes trained for about 12 years ... | d. ( ) who bought and sold all the goods. |
| 5 The nobles ... | e. ( ) kept Ancient Egyptians safe. |
| | f. ( ) collected taxes. |

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4



1 water – Where – from – does – come – our?

..............................................................................

2 organized – collected – soldiers – taxes – The – nobles – and.

..............................................................................

3 stay – the – ground – doesn't – vapor – on – Water.

..............................................................................

4 were – Soldiers – safe – busy – Egypt – keeping.

..............................................................................

**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child listen and complete. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل.

(2) Help your child read and match. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.

(3) Help your child reorder the words to make correct sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات ليكون جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.



# TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 3



## Listening

15

**1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):** استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ): 4

1. Rain falls from clouds into streams, rivers, lakes, and oceans. ( )
2. 'Precipitation' is when the sun warms water and it becomes water vapor. ( )
3. Water vapor rises in the air and gets warmer. ( )
4. Water in the clouds gets heavier and falls to the ground again. ( )

## Reading

**2 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

Ancient Egyptians had important jobs to do. The pharaoh was the person who ruled the country. The nobles collected taxes and organized soldiers. Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe. Scribes wrote many different things like letters, records, and important papers. Traders bought and sold everything – food, clothes, jewelry, soldiers' uniforms, ships, and materials for building. Artisans took the materials from the traders and made them into things for people to use, like furniture, chariots, and clothes.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. The .................................. was the person who ruled the country.
   a) artisan b) noble c) trader d) pharaoh
2. The ............ collected taxes.
   a) soldiers b) traders c) nobles d) artisans.

**B Answer the following questions:**

3. What did artisans do in Ancient Egyptian society? ..................................
4. What is the general idea of the text? ..................................

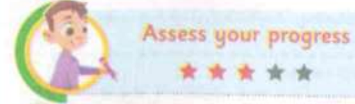
## Writing



**3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Scribes in Ancient Egypt" using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 5

What did scribes do in Ancient Egypt?
How long did they train before they could write on papyrus?

..................................
..................................
..................................



Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |





# STUDY

Lesson 4

# This is so interesting!





## Language Focus



**Listen, point, and say:** استمع، أشر وقل:

### (-er) suffix

A suffix is a group of letters that comes at the end of a word to to give it a new meaning.

اللاحقة هي مجموعة من الأحرف تأتي في نهاية الكلمة لتعطي معنى جديدًا.

e.g. We can add the suffix (-er) to the end of words to make a noun.

يمكننا إضافة اللاحقة (er-) إلى نهاية الكلمات لتكوين اسم.



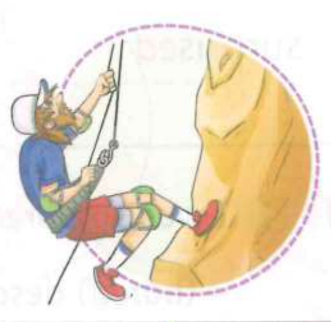


teach يُدَرِّس | teacher مُدرسة





read يقرأ | reader قارئ



climb يتسلق | climber متسلق





football كرة القدم | footballer لاعب كرة القدم



farm مزرعة | farmer مزارع



travel يسافر | traveler مسافر

## Adjectives ending in "-ed" and "-ing"

### -ed adjectives

Adjectives that end in -ed generally describe feelings – they tell us how people or living things feel.

الصفات التى تنتهى بـ (-ed) عمومًا تصف المشاعر - تخبرنا كيف يشعر الناس أو الكائنات الحية.

| | |
|---|---|
| annoyed | غاضب |
| amazed | مندهش |
| interested | مهتم |
| tired | تعبان |
| surprised | متفاجئ |

### -ing adjectives

Adjectives that end in -ing generally describe a situation, a thing, or a person that causes the feeling.

الصفات التى تنتهى بـ (-ing) عمومًا تصف موقفًا أو شيئًا أو الشخص الذى يسبب الشعور.

| | |
|---|---|
| annoying | مزعج |
| amazing | مدهش |
| interesting | مثير للاهتمام |
| tiring | مُتعب |
| surprising | مدهش / مفاجئ |

e.g.

1 I was so bored in that movie.

كنت أشعر بالملل فى هذا الفيلم.

– (bored) describes how I felt about the movie.

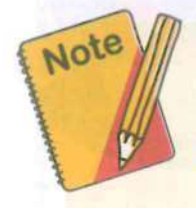
"bored" تصف ما أشعر به تجاه الفيلم.

2 That movie was so boring.

كان هذا الفيلم مملًا جدًا.

– (boring) describes what the movie was like.

"boring" تصف كيف كان الفيلم.




If the verb ends in "-e", we take off the "-e" and add "-ed" or "-ing".

إذا انتهى الفعل بـ "-e" نحذف الـ "-e" ثم نضيف "-ed" أو "-ing".

e.g. surprise → surprised, surprising

**Parents' tips**

Help your child use the suffix "-er" and the adjectives ending in "-ed" and "-ing".

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم اللاحقة "-er" والصفات التى تنتهى بـ "-ed" و"-ing".





# Pronunciation



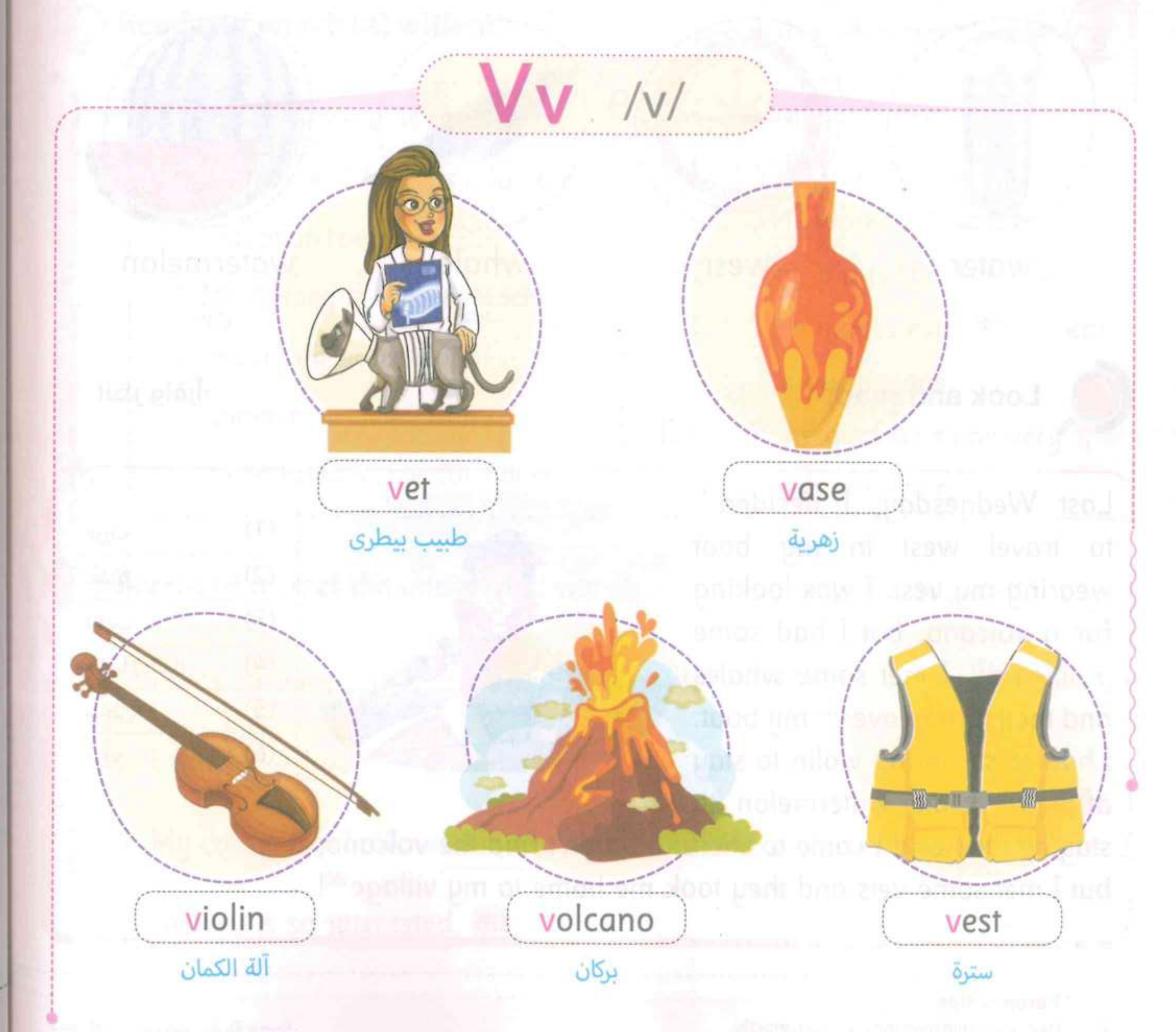
**Listen, point, and say:** استمع، أشر وقل:

/v/ and /w/ are both voiced sounds. This means that if you place your hand on your throat, you can feel the vibration when you say them.

**A) To pronounce /v/, press your top teeth against your bottom lip.**

لنطق الـ /v/، اضغط على أسنانك العلوية مقابل شفتك السفلية.

## Vv /v/



B) To pronounce /w/, make a tight circle with your lips.

لنطق الـ /w/، اصنع دائرة ضيقة بشفتيك.

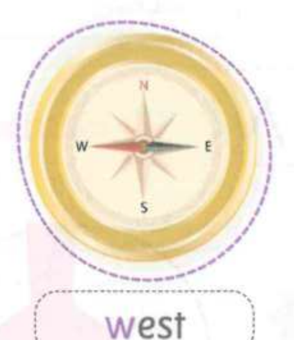


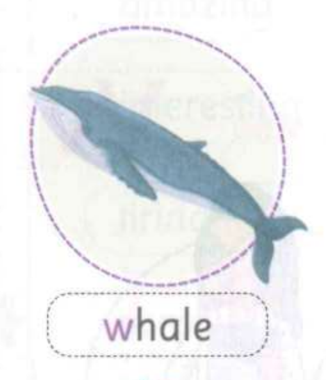


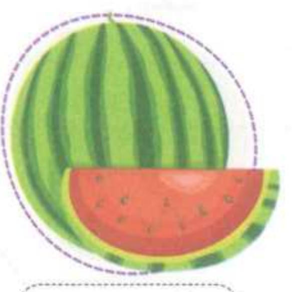



| winter | wet | wheel |
|---|---|---|
| الشتاء | مبتل | عجلة |









| water | west | whale | watermelon |
|---|---|---|---|
| مياه | غرب | حوت | بطيخ |



## Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Last Wednesday, I decided(1) to travel west in my boat wearing my vest. I was looking for a volcano, but I had some problems(2). I met some whales and they turned over(3) my boat. I had to sit on my violin to stay afloat(4)! I ate watermelon to stay healthy and I came to shore(5). I didn't find the volcano, but I met some vets and they took me home to my village(6)!

| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | قررت |
| (2) | مشاكل |
| (3) | انقلب |
| (4) | طافيا (عائما) |
| (5) | شاطئ |
| (6) | قرية |

**Parents' tips**

Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:

يوم الأربعاء الماضى قررت السفر غربًا فى قاربي مرتديًا سترتى. كنت أبحث عن بركان ولكن كان لدى بعض المشاكل. قابلت بعض الحيتان وقلبت قاربى. كان على أن أجلس على كمانى لأبقى طافيا ( عائما)! أنا أكلت البطيخ للبقاء بصحة جيدة ووصلت إلى الشاطئ. لم أجد البركان ، لكنى التقيت ببعض الأطباء البيطريين وأخذونى إلى قريتى!




# PRACTICE Lesson 4



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: (4)

Ali : What's your dad ..........(1)..........?

Hossam : He's a ..........(2).......... .

Ali : What does he do?

Hossam : He ..........(3).......... the food which people need.

Ali : Where does he work?

Hossam : He works in his ..........(4).......... in Giza.

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): 



| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 Nader's father is a farmer. | a. ( ) She's so interesting. |
| 2 Mohamed Elneny is a famous Egyptian footballer, ... | b. ( ) She's so boring. |
| 3 Mr Ahmed is a great teacher. | c. ( ) He works on his farm. |
| 4 Nour is a professional climber. | d. ( ) he plays for Arsenal. |
| 5 I can listen to her for hours. | e. ( ) He makes everything clear in our lessons. |
| | f. ( ) She goes up some very high mountains. |

## 3 Read and correct the underlined words: اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التى تحتها خط:



1 I was so boring in that lesson; I almost fell asleep. (..........)

2 I ran for 4 kilometers. I was tiring. (..........)

3 My cousin is a brilliant reading - he reads about 20 books a year. (..........)

4 History is so interested.  (..........)

**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child listen and complete.
(2) Help your child read and match.
(3) Help your child read and correct the underlined words.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويصحح الكلمات التى تحتها خط.



# TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 4




15

## Listening

### 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

4

1. Waleed traveled east. ( )
2. Waleed was wearing a vest. ( )
3. Waleed was looking for a whale. ( )
4. He had to sit on his violin to stay afloat. ( )

## Reading

### 2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

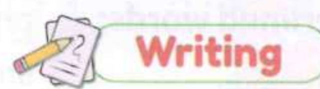
People have different jobs. A teacher is the person who teaches us many interesting information. A teacher is always kind and friendly. The teacher makes everything clear in the class. A footballer is the person who plays football. Egypt has famous footballers like Mohammed Salah and Mohammed Elneny. A farmer works on a farm. He has a very important job; he grows food for us to eat and grow. A climber is the person who goes up high mountains. A climber must be professional to climb mountains safely.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. The text is about different .................... which help us.
   a) tools b) jobs c) sports d) foods
2. A .................... is the person who goes up high mountains.
   a) footballer b) farmer c) climber d) teacher

**B Answer the following questions:**

3. Mention two famous Egyptian footballers from the passage. ....................
4. Why are farmers important? ....................



## Writing

### 3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Egyptian footballers" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:



5

famous footballer – plays for

....................................................................

....................................................................

....................................................................



Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |






# STUDY — Lessons 5 & 6 Writing / Project





## Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

New message

From Amir
To Tamer
Subject Unusual animals

Dear Tamer,
Thanks for your email (1). How are things? It was really interesting to hear about the sports you like. I love basketball (2) and I play on a team once a week.
This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong (3) – can you see the photo? I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname (4) is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed (5) every day.
What about you? What's your favorite unusual animal?
Write back and let me know.
Hope to (6) hear from you soon!
Amir

Send

| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | بريد إلكترونى |
| (2) | لعبة كرة السلة |
| (3) | أطوم (اسم الحيوان) |
| (4) | اسم الشهرة |
| (5) | قاع البحر |
| (6) | يأمل |

### How to write an email

**Introduction**

1. Begin your email with "Dear" or "Hi" and the person's name. ابدأ بريدك الإلكترونى بكلمة "عزيزى" أو "مرحبًا" واسم الشخص.
2. Say why you are writing. Use phrases like "Just a quick note" and "Thanks for writing to me". قل لماذا تكتب، استخدم عبارات مثل مجرد ملاحظة سريعة وشكرًا على مراسلتى.

**Body**

3. Give one idea in a paragraph and expand on it – look how Amir mentions the dugong, then describes it. أعط فكرة واحدة فى فقرة وواصل شرحها - انظر كيف يذكر أمير الأطوم، ثم يصفه.
4. When writing to a friend, you can use informal language.

e.g. Words like "awesome" and "cool," contractions like: "I'm," and phrases like "How's life? and How are things?"
عند الكتابة إلى صديق، يمكنك استخدام لغة غير رسمية، على سبيل المثال كلمات مثل مدهش ورائعة، واختصارات مثل "I'm" بدلا من "I am"، وعبارات مثل " كيف حالك؟"

**End**

5. End your email with phrases like: Write soon, Hope to hear from you soon, See you soon, All the best, or Bye for now, and then your name. قم بإنهاء بريدك الإلكترونى بعبارات مثل اكتب قريبًا، آمل أن أسمع منك قريبًا، أراك قريبًا، أتمنى لك التوفيق، أو إلى اللقاء الآن ثم اسمك.

**Parents' tips**
Help your child recognize the form of email.
ساعد طفلك فى التعرف على شكل البريد الإلكترونى.

الترجمة:
عزيزى تامر،
شكرا على بريدك الإلكترونى. كيف حالك؟ كان من الممتع حقًا أن تخبرنى عن الرياضات التى تحبها. أحب لعبة كرة السلة وألعب فى فريق مرة واحدة فى الأسبوع.
نتحدث كثيرًا هذا الأسبوع عن الحيوانات غير المألوفه فى المدرسة. اطلعنا إلى حيوانات من جميع أنحاء العالم وبعضها من مصر. حيوانى غير المألوف المفضل من مصر هو الأطوم - هل يمكنك رؤية الصورة؟ أعتقد أنه يتمتع بوجه ودود جميل وهو لطيف للغاية! لقبه هو بقرة البحر ويقضى ساعات طويلة من تناول العشب من قاع البحر كل يوم.
وماذا عنك؟ ما هو حيوانك غير المألوف المفضل؟
اكتب مرة أخرى وأعلمنى.
أتمنى أن أسمع منك قريبا
أمير



# Lessons 5 & 6

11

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

1. Amir's favorite unusual .................... is the dugong.
2. This animal got a lovely friendly .................... .
3. Its nickname is the sea .................... .
4. This animal spends many hours eating .................... from the sea bed.

## 2 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: 2

1. can you see the photo

..................................................

2. it has got a lovely friendly face

..................................................

## 3 Write an email about an animal of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements: 5

**Your email address is: hany@student.com**
**Your friend's email address is : ali@student.com.**

اكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا من أربعين (40) كلمة عن حيوان باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

cold areas – black and white feathers

New message

From ....................

To ....................

Subject ....................

Dear ..........,

..................................................
..................................................
..................................................
..................................................
..................................................
..................................................

Send

**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child listen and complete. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل.
(2) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.
(3) Help your child write about the given topic. ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن الموضوع المعطى.





# TEST YOURSELF on Lessons 5 & 6



13

### Listening

## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ): 4

1. Tamer is writing to Amir. ( )
2. Dugong is an unusual animal from Egypt. ( )
3. Dugong is a land animal. ( )
4. Dugong eats meat. ( )

### Reading

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): 5

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1. I love basketball. | a. ( ) from the sea bed every day. |
| 2. Dugong is an unusual animal ... | b. ( ) around the world. |
| 3. Dugong has got a lovely friendly face. | c. ( ) from Egypt. |
| 4. Dugong has a nickname. | d. ( ) It's called the sea cow. |
| 5. Dugong eats grass ... | e. ( ) I play on a team once a week. |
| | f. ( ) It's very cute. |

### Writing

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4

1. your – What's – unusual – animal – favorite – , Ola?

..................................................

2. got – lovely – has – friendly – Dugong – face – a.

..................................................

3. hear – soon – from – Hope – you – to!

..................................................

4. sea – nickname – the – cow – Dugong's – is.

..................................................



Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |

# REVIEW



## Vocabulary

### Wildlife

kangaroo, panda, bat, lion, penguin, dolphin, snail, parrot

## Pronunciation

**Vv /v/**

vet, vase, violin, volcano, vest

**Ww /w/**

winter, wet, wheel, water, west, whale, watermelon

## Language Focus

### 1 can / can't

**Form:**

Subject + can / can't + (inf) ... .

e.g. I can play basketball.

e.g. Penguins can't fly.

**Questions:**

A: Can + subject + (inf)... ?
B: Yes, subject + can.
OR
B: No, subject + can't.

A: Can you play tennis?
B: Yes, I can.

A: Can she make a cake?
B: No, she can't.

### 2 could / couldn't

**Form:**

Subject + could/couldn't + (inf) ...

e.g. When I was little, I could sit on my dad's knee.

I couldn't take the bus, so I had to walk.

**Questions:**

A: Could + subject + (inf)... ?
B: Yes, subject + could.
OR
B: No, subject + couldn't.

e.g. A: Could she speak when she was six months old?
B: Yes, she could say "mama" and "dada!"

A: Could you ride a bike when you were three?
B: No, I couldn't.





# Check Your Vocabulary



## Lesson 1

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| حلزون | ............ | الكنغر | ............ |
| خفاش | ............ | بطريق | ............ |
| ببغاء | ............ | أسد | ............ |
| دولفين | ............ | باندا | ............ |
| حياة برية | ............ | صدفة | ............ |
| محيط | ............ | نبات الخيزران | ............ |
| جراب | ............ | ثلاجة | ............ |

## Lesson 2

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| جذع شجرة | ............ | فرع شجرة | ............ |
| فول سوداني | ............ | مرهق | ............ |
| قاموس | ............ | مسافر | ............ |
| ملجأ | ............ | ظل | ............ |
| وقح | ............ | جاحد (غير شكور) | ............ |
| نسيم | ............ | عديم الفائدة | ............ |
| مريح | ............ | | |

## Lesson 3

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| نبلاء | ............ | حرفيون | ............ |
| جنود | ............ | فرعون | ............ |
| مزارعون | ............ | كتبة | ............ |
| مملكة | ............ | تجار | ............ |
| نبات البردى | ............ | مجتمع | ............ |
| مجوهرات | ............ | الضرائب | ............ |
| أثاث | ............ | جيش | ............ |
| مركبة حربية | ............ | | ............ |

## Lesson 4

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| مدرس | ............ | قارئ | ............ |
| متسلق | ............ | لاعب كرة القدم | ............ |
| مزارع | ............ | زهرية | ............ |
| آلة الكمان | ............ | طبيب بيطري | ............ |
| سترة | ............ | بركان | ............ |
| مبتل | ............ | الشتاء | ............ |
| غرب | ............ | عجلة | ............ |
| بطيخ | ............ | حوت | ............ |
| مياه | ............ | | |

## WRITING TIME

### "Wildlife animals"

live in Australia – beautiful and colorful

There are many wild animals in the world. Kangaroos live in Australia. They jump on two legs. Parrots are birds. They are very beautiful and colorful. They live in the rainforest. Dolphins are very intelligent. They swim in a group with their family in the ocean.

### "Scribes in Ancient Egypt"

* What was special about scribes?
* What did they do?

Scribes were usually the only people who could read and write. They trained for 12 years before they wrote on papyrus. They wrote many different things like letters, records, and important papers. Without the scribes, we would know almost nothing about Ancient Egypt today.

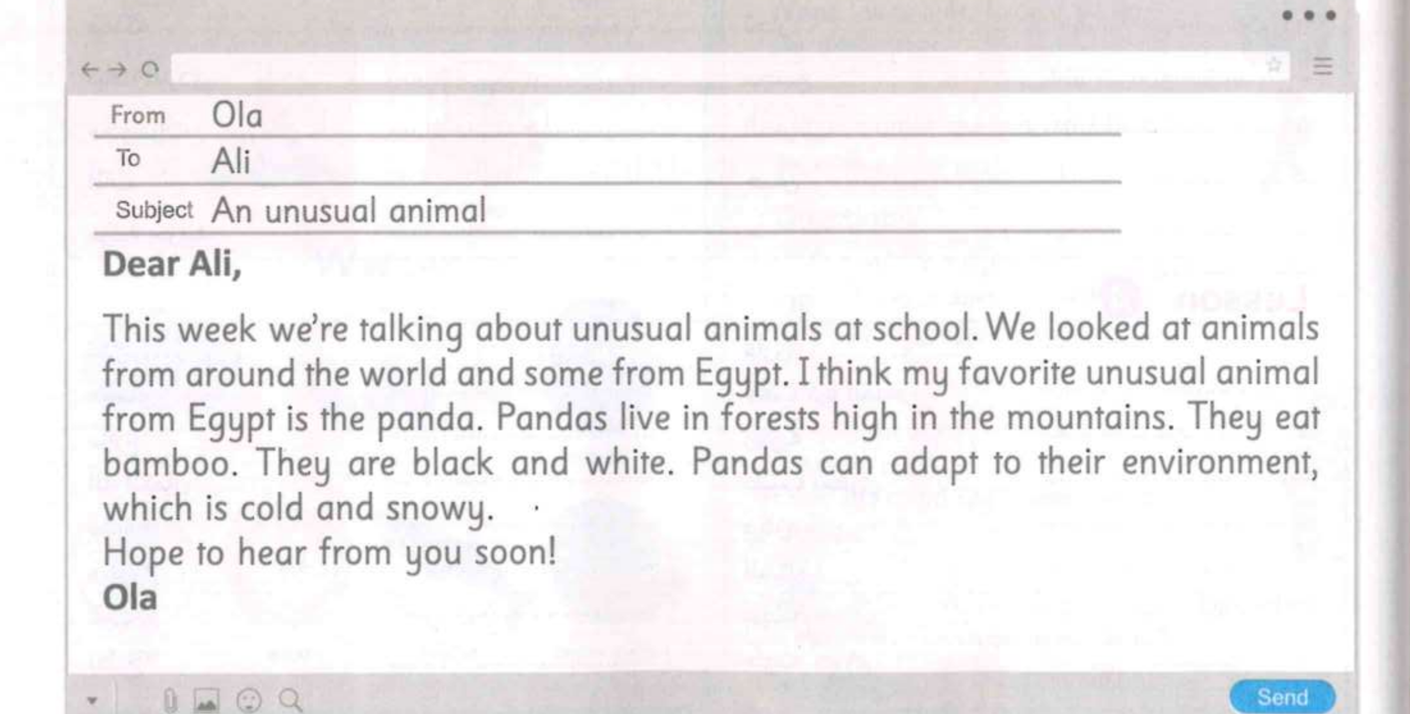
### "Egyptian footballers"

plays football – plays for Liverpool

People have different jobs. A footballer is the person who plays football. A footballer must be fast and have good skills. Egypt has famous footballers like Mohammed Salah who plays for Liverpool and Mohammed Elneny who plays for Arsenal.

### "An unusual animal"

* What's your favorite unusual animal?
* Where does this animal live?


From Ola
To Ali
Subject An unusual animal

**Dear Ali,**

This week we're talking about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. I think my favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the panda. Pandas live in forests high in the mountains. They eat bamboo. They are black and white. Pandas can adapt to their environment, which is cold and snowy.
Hope to hear from you soon!
**Ola**

Send






# More on Grammar




• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:




1. Snails (can – can't – aren't – isn't) run fast.
2. Last year, he (can – could – can't – couldn't) play football, but now he can.
3. My grandpa is a (farm – farmer – farming – farms), he grows food for us.
4. That long walk was very (amazing – interesting – tiring – surprising), I can't wait to get home and relax.

## 2 Read and correct the underlined words: اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التى تحتها خط:

4

1. This book is so <u>bored</u>! (..................)
2. It's <u>annoyed</u> when people talk so loudly. (..................)
3. When he was a baby, he <u>can't</u> speak. (..................)
4. Now, he can <u>understanding</u> what the teacher is saying. (..................)

## 3 Read and rewrite the following: اقرأ وأعد كتابة الآتى:

4

1. I can play chess this year. (last year)
   ..............................................................................
2. The movie was boring. (I was)
   ..............................................................................
3. Sarah teaches very well. (teacher)
   ..............................................................................
4. No, I couldn't. But I could swim when I was ten. (Could ..?)
   ..............................................................................

**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child read and choose. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار.
(2) Help your child correct the underlined words. ساعد طفلك أن يصحح الكلمات التى تحتها خط.
(3) Help your child rewrite the sentences or questions correctly. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد كتابة الجمل أو الأسئلة بطريقة صحيحة.



# AL ADWAA TEST

30



## Listening

### 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ): 4

1. Snails have two arms and legs. ( )
2. Kangaroos live in Africa. ( )
3. Bats can't fly in the morning. ( )
4. Lions are big dogs. ( )

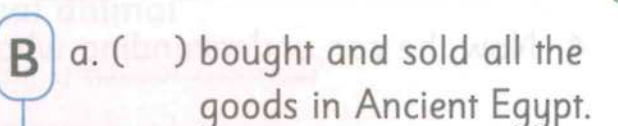
### 2 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

1. .................... live on ice and snow.
2. Parrots live in the .................... .
3. A dolphin swims in a .................... with its family in the ocean.
4. Pandas eat .................... .

## Reading

### 3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): 5

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1. Could you play the piano... | a. ( ) bought and sold all the goods in Ancient Egypt. |
| 2. When water becomes water vapor, ... | b. ( ) he always shouts out. |
| 3. Traders... | c. ( ) They guarded the kingdom. |
| 4. Soldiers kept ancient Egyptians safe. | d. ( ) I was looking for a volcano. |
| 5. I find Waleed very annoying, ... | e. ( ) when you were a child? |
| | f. ( ) this process is called "evaporation". |



### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

People played important roles in Ancient Egypt. The pharaoh was the person in charge. The nobles collected taxes and organized soldiers. Soldiers guarded the kingdom. Scribes were the only people who could read and write. They trained for about 12 years before they wrote on papyrus. Without the scribes, we would know almost nothing about Ancient Egypt today. Farmers produced the food that was eaten by the pharaoh, nobles, the soldiers, the scribes, the traders, and the artisans. Traders were the people who bought and sold everything in Ancient Egyptian society.



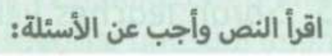


**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. Soldiers guarded the .................... .
   a) pharaoh b) king c) kingdom d) nobles
2. .................... collected taxes and organized soldiers.
   a) Nobles b) Scribes c) Soldiers d) Traders

**B Answer the following questions:**

3. How important were the scribes in Ancient Egypt? ....................
4. Summarize the text in two sentences. ....................





## Writing

### 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4

1. in – Snails – shells – live – their – can.
....................
2. was – could – When – I – little, – run – I.
....................
3. into – Rainwater – ground – straight – goes – the.
....................
4. birds – see – What – you – did – ,Ramy?
....................

### 6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 2

1. what animals did you see
....................
2. i couldn't speak german last year.
....................

### 7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Water cycle" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 5

called precipitation – becomes water vapor

....................
....................
....................
....................

# Non-fiction Reader







## Are There Endangered Animals in Egypt?







**Listen, point, and say:** استمع، أشر وقل:

### Main Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| endangered (adj) | مهدد بالانقراض | extinct (adj) | منقرض |
| poaching | الصيد الجائر | Egyptian tortoise | السلحفاه المصرية |
| Dorcas gazelle | غزال دوركاس | herbivores | أكلي الأعشاب |
| loss | خسارة | pollution | تلوث |
| actions | أفعال/ تصرفات | | |

### Extra vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| species | أنواع/فصائل | population | عدد السكان | length | الطول |
| weight | الوزن | top speed | السرعة القصوى | diet | النظام الغذائي |
| wild (adj) | برى | Negev desert | صحراء النقب | farming | الزراعة |
| building | البناء | | | | |

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

**Regular verbs** أفعـــال منتظمـة

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| protect | يحمى | protected | live | يعيش | lived |
| destroy | يدمر | destroyed | hunt | يصطاد | hunted |

**Irregular verbs** أفعـــال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| become | يصبح | became | keep | يربى (للحيوانات) | kept |

### Definitions

| | |
|---|---|
| extinct (adj): منقرض | if something is extinct, it no longer exists<br>إذا انقرض شيء ما، يعنى أنه لم يعد موجوداً. |
| habitat (n): مكان معيشة | the place where an animal or a plant lives<br>المكان الذي يعيش فيه حيوان أو نبات |

**Parents' tips**
Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.



## Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

If an animal is endangered (1), it means that it could become extinct. Animals can become endangered for several reasons including loss of habitat, pollution, and poaching (2).

It's our responsibility to protect all wild animals because we share the Earth with them! Our actions shouldn't hurt wild animals or their habitats.

| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | مهدد بالانقراض |
| (2) | الصيد الجائر |
| (3) | آكلي الأعشاب |
| (4) | منقرض |

In Egypt, around 70 species of animals are endangered. Let's look at two of them:

### Egyptian tortoise



**Facts**
Population: 7,470
can live up to: 50 years
Length: 14.4 cm
Weight: 160–350 g
Top speed: up to 8 km per hour
Diet: plants and leaves

### Dorcas gazelle



**Facts**
Population: 1,000–2,000
can live up to: 15 years
Length: 90–100 cm
Weight: 15–20 kg
Top speed: up to 96 km per hour
Diet: plants and leaves

The Egyptian tortoise is one of the smallest tortoises in the world. It lives in the desert areas of Egypt and Libya. However, the Egyptian tortoise is now endangered. This is because its habitat has been destroyed, but also because people take them from the wild to keep as pets.

Dorcas gazelles live in the Sahara and Negev deserts. They are herbivores (3) – this means they only eat leaves and plants. Dorcas gazelles are nearly extinct (4) for two main reasons: firstly, people hunt them for their meat and skin. Secondly, more and more people are using their habitat for farming and building.

### Check point

1. Where does the Egyptian tortoise live?
   ..........................................................................................
2. Why Dorcas gazelles are nearly extinct?
   ..........................................................................................

**Parents' tips**
Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

**الترجمة:**

إذا كان حيوان ما مهدد بالانقراض، فهذا يعنى أنه من الممكن أن يصبح منقرضًا. يمكن أن تصبح الحيوانات مهددة بالانقراض لعدة أسباب بما فى ذلك فقدان أماكن معيشتهم والتلوث والصيد الجائر. حماية الحيوانات البرية كلها مسئوليتنا؛ لأننا نتشارك معهم الأرض. يجب ألا تؤذى أفعالنا الحيوانات أو بيئاتهم.

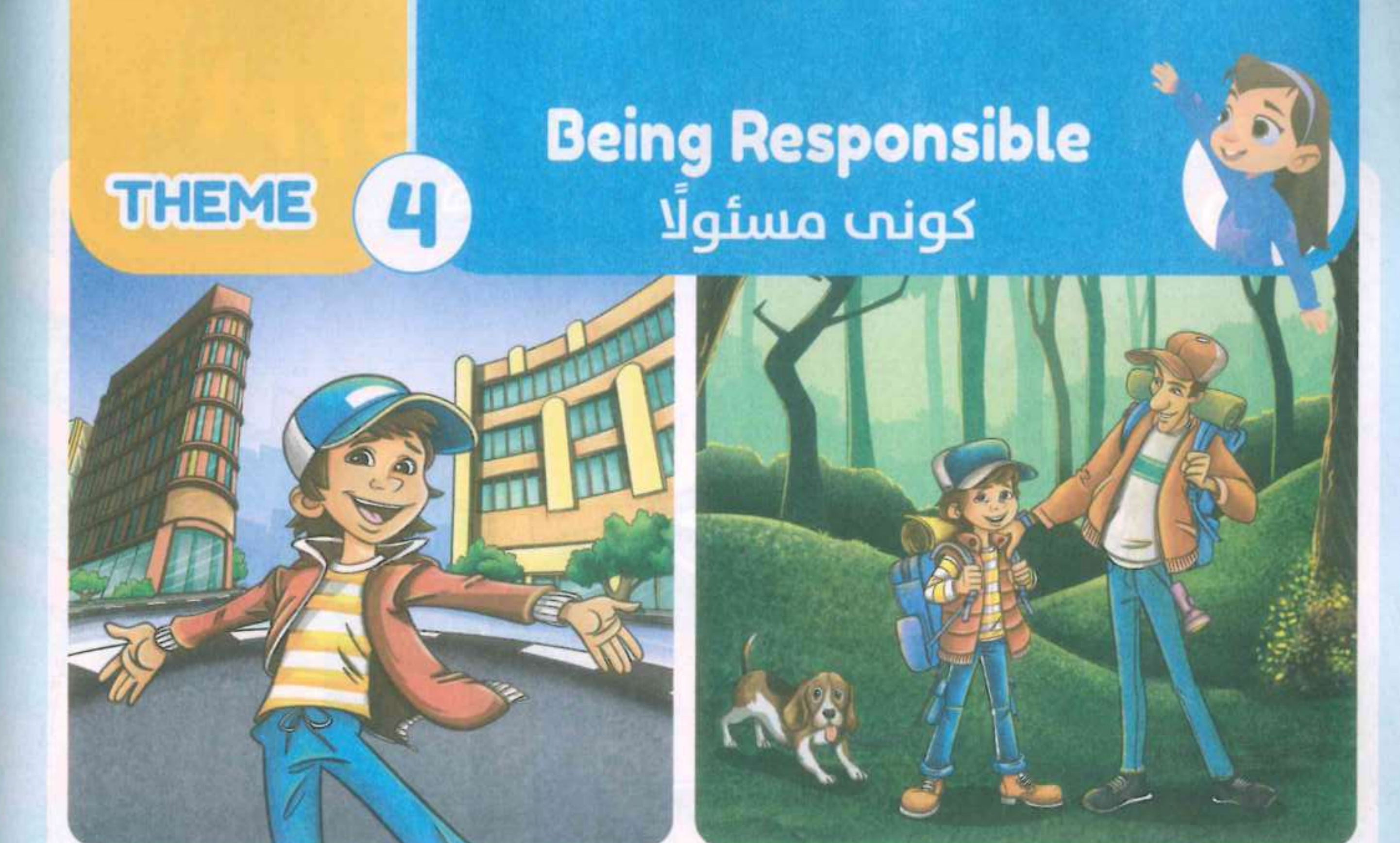
فى مصر، هناك حوالى ٧٠ نوعًا من الحيوانات مهددة بالانقراض. دعونا نلقى نظرة على اثنين منهم:

تعتبر السلحفاة المصرية من أصغر السلاحف فى العالم. إنها تعيش فى المناطق الصحراوية فى مصر وليبيا. ومع ذلك، فإن السلحفاة المصرية الآن مهددة بالانقراض. هذا ليس بسبب تدمير مكان معيشتها فقط، ولكن أيضًا لأن الناس تأخذها من البرية لتربيتها كحيوان أليف.

يعيش غزال دوركاس فى الصحراء الكبرى وصحارى النقب. إنها حيوانات آكلة للأعشاب - هذا يعنى أنها تأكل أوراق الأشجار والنباتات فقط. غزال دوركاس تقريبًا على وشك الانقراض لسببين رئيسيين: أولًا، أن الناس يصطادونها من أجل لحومها وجلدها. ثانيًا: يستخدم المزيد والمزيد من الناس مكان معيشتها للزراعة والبناء.



# THEME 4 Being Responsible
# كونى مسئولًا





**Parents' tips**

**Theme Four "Being Responsible"** aims to help students understand more about the world around them. Students discover more about different places in town, famous cities to visit around Egypt, and what makes their towns perfect. It also speaks about the benefits of getting out into the fresh air and different places to spend vacations around the world.

المحور الرابع «أنا أكون مسئولًا» يهدف إلى مساعدة الطلاب أن يفهموا أكثر عن العالم المحيط بهم. يكتشف الطلاب المزيد عن الأماكن الموجودة بالبلدة، مدن مشهورة داخل مصر لزيارتها، وما يجعل مدينتهم مثالية. يتحدث أيضًا عن فوائد التنزه فى الهواء الطلق والأماكن المختلفة لقضاء الإجازات حول العالم.

Unit 10

# Let's Visit Egypt

# هيا نزور مصر



### Unit Overview

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to: 
  - listen, read, research, and write about places in a town.
  - practice using the imperative to tell someone to do or not to do something.
  - practice using questions and short answers.
  - read and say words with diphthongs.
  - estimate with mental math.
  - write a paragraph about his/her town.
  - make a poster about his/her perfect town.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الأماكن فى المدينة.
  - يتدرب على استخدام صيغة الأمر لإخبار شخص ما أن يفعل أو لا يفعل شيئًا ما.
  - يتدرب على استخدام الأسئلة والإجابات القصيرة.
  - يقرأ ويقول الكلمات باستخدام الإدغام.
  - يقدّر باستخدام الرياضيات العقلية.
  - يكتب فقرة عن مدينته / مدينتها.
  - يصمم ملصقًا عن مدينته / مدينتها المثالية.

## Warm up

This unit is about different places in town. It talks about life and society in in Ancient and modern Egypt. It's also about forming positive and negative imperatives and writing about the perfect town.

تدور هذه الوحدة عن الأماكن المختلفة بالمدينة. تتحدث الوحدة عن الحياة والمجتمع فى مصر القديمة والحديثة. كما تتحدث عن تكوين صيغة الأمر بالإيجاب والسلب والكتابة عن المدينة المثالية.

### Did you know?

Fayoum is the oldest town in Egypt. Archaeologists* think it is more than 7,000 years old.

الفيوم أقدم مدينة مصرية. يعتقد علماء الآثار أن عمرها أكثر من ٧٠٠٠ عام.



### I can find it out!

Today, the population* of Fayoum is approximately* 3.8 million. Most people live in Cairo where the population is about 10.201.183. Around 5,521,000 people live in Alexandria as well.



اليوم، يبلغ التعداد السكانى للفيوم حوالى ٣،٨ مليون نسمة . يعيش معظم السكان فى القاهرة التى يبلغ تعدادها السكانى حوالى ١٠،٢٠١،١٨٣ نسمة، وكذلك يعيش حوالى ٥،٥٢١،٠٠٠ نسمة فى الإسكندرية.

| archaeologists* | علماء الآثار | population* | تعداد سكانى | approximately* | تقريبًا |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|

# STUDY




## Lesson 1

# We love Alexandria!



## Main Vocabulary





Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:




bank
بنك



factory
مصنع



monument
أثر



library
مكتبة




shopping mall
مول تجارى



square
ميدان




station
محطة





## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| stores | متاجر (محلات) | markets | أسواق |
| roof garden | حديقة السطح | mint tea | شاى بالنعناع |
| relaxing (adj.) | مريح | cuisine | مأكولات |
| traditional (adj.) | تقليدى | lovely (adj.) | جميل |
| ingredients | مكونات | originally | فى الأصل |
| Barcelona | برشلونة | mix | مزيج |
| culture | ثقافة | traditions | عادات |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular verbs | | | أفعال منتظمة | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
| chat | يتحادث | chatted | own | يملك | owned |
| serve | يقدم (الطعام) | served | remind | يُذكّر | reminded |
| **Irregular verbs** | | | **أفعال غير منتظمة** | | |
| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
| think | يعتقد | thought | sit | يجلس | sat |
| drink | يشرب | drank | buy | يشترى | bought |

## Expressions and Phrases

| | |
|---|---|
| I haven't been to any yet. | لم أذهب إلى أى منها بعد. |
| spend ages | نقضى الكثير من الوقت |
| on vacation | فى عطلة |
| show (someone) around | يرى (شخص ما) الجوار |

**Parents' tips**

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.

## Why we love Alexandria!



**Look and read:** انظر واقرأ:

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. There's even a beach!
We asked some people who live there and tourists what they think...



الإسكندرية مكان رائع للزيارة. هناك الكثير لتراه وتفعله هنا! إنها مدينة كبيرة بها العديد من المطاعم والمتاجر والأسواق والمتاحف المدهشة. حتى إنه هناك شاطئ! سألنا بعض الناس الذين يعيشون هناك والسياح عما يعتقدونه ...



**Jens**

I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. I think it's really cool here. I think there are some good museums, but I haven't been to any yet. I love just sitting in the roof garden of my hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.

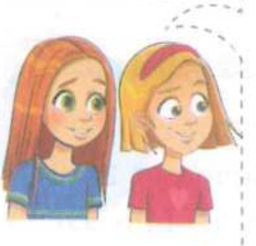
أنا أزور الإسكندرية من ألمانيا. الأمر حقًّا رائع هنا. أعتقد أنه يوجد بعض المتاحف الجيدة، ولكنى لم أذهب إلى أى منها بعد. إننى فقط أحب الجلوس فى حديقة السطح الخاصة بالفندق وأشرب الشاى بالنعناع المصرى اللذيذ وأتحدث مع أشخاص آخرين. إنه أمر مريح جدًّا.



**Hanan**

I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a restaurant here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the local cuisine. We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market in the old town.

عشت فى الإسكندرية طوال حياتى. أمتلك مطعمًا هنا ولذلك يتوجب علىّ دعوتك لزيارة المطعم لتجرب بعض المأكولات المحلية. نحن نقدم أطعمة مصرية تقليدية باستخدام مكونات محلية طازجة وجميلة. لدينا العديد من المتاجر الرائعة ولكنى أفضل شراء المكونات من سوق المدينة القديمة.



**Kira and Lena**

We're from a small town in England. The stores aren't very good there. That's what we love most about Alexandria – the shopping malls! We spend ages walking around them. We like the people. They are so friendly!

نحن من مدينة صغيرة فى انجلترا. المتاجر ليست جيدة جدًّا هناك. هذا أكثر شىء نحبه فى الإسكندرية - المولات التجارية ! يمكننا قضاء الكثير من الوقت فى التجول حولها. نحن نحب الناس. هم ودودون جدًّا!



**Karim**

I'm Egyptian, originally from Cairo. I moved to Alexandria last year and I love it here. I work in a bank. My favorite place is the beach – there isn't one in Cairo! It can get very hot here in summer, so it's great to go there and swim.

أنا مصرى، فى الأصل من القاهرة. انتقلت إلى الأسكندرية العام الماضى وأحب المكان هنا. أنا أعمل فى بنك. مكانى المفضل هو الشاطئ - لايوجد شاطىء فى القاهرة! يمكن أن يصبح الجو حارًا جدًّا فى الصيف، لذلك من الرائع الذهاب إلى هناك والسباحة.



**Paulo**

I'm on vacation here from Barcelona. I like Alexandria because it reminds me of home – a big, modern city near the sea. I love the mix of modern and old buildings. Also, I like to find out about the culture and traditions. The library is amazing!

أنا فى عطلة هنا من برشلونة. أنا أحب الإسكندرية لأنها تذكرنى بموطنى - مدينة كبيرة وعصرية بالقرب من البحر. أنا أحب هذا المزيج من المبانى الحديثة والقديمة. كما أحب أيضًا اكتشاف الثقافات والعادات. المكتبة مدهشة!

**Parents' tips**

Help your child listen to the dialog using the QR code and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her classmates.

ساعد طفلك فى الاستماع إلى المحادثة باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.

## Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



**Sara**

I'm going to visit my aunt and uncle. We're going by train.

سأزور عمتى وعمى. نحن ذاهبون بالقطار.



**Ahmed**

My cousin is visiting us and we're going to show him around. He's never seen the Pyramids.

ابن عمى سيقوم بزيارتنا وسوف نريه المنطقة فى الجوار. لم يسبق له أن رأى الأهرامات.



**Dina**

We went on a school trip to find out how cotton is turned into clothes like T-shirts and dresses.

ذهبنا فى رحلة مدرسية لمعرفة كيف يتم تحويل القطن إلى ملابس مثل التيشرتات والفساتين.



**Youssef**

I want to borrow some books.

أريد استعارة بعض الكتب.

**Parents' tips**

Help your child listen to the dialog using the QR code and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her classmates.

ساعد طفلك فى الاستماع إلى المحادثة باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.





# PRACTICE Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

Paulo is from Barcelona. He is on vacation in Alexandria this summer. Paulo likes to spend the summer in Alexandria because there are many things to see and do there. He stays in a big hotel with a small roof garden on top. He likes to sit there, drink sweet Egyptian mint tea, and chat with other people. He likes to visit local restaurants from time to time to try some of the traditional Egyptian cuisines. They are usually made from lovely fresh ingredients.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. Paulo likes to drink .................. on the roof garden.
   a) water b) mint tea c) juice d) coffee
2. The word "cuisines" means ..................
   a) stores b) markets c) foods d) clothes

**B Answer the following questions:**

3. Where is Paulo from?
   ..................................................
4. Why does Paulo like to spend the summer in Alexandria?
   ..................................................

## 2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4



1. Where – from – Karim – does – come?
   ..................................................
2. good – There – museums – some – are – Alexandria – in.
   ..................................................
3. from – a small – They're – in – town – England.
   ..................................................
4. likes – mint – Hanan – the hotel – drinking – tea – in.
   ..................................................



## 3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: 2



1. i am visiting Alexandria from germany.
   ..................................................
2. why do you love alexandria?
   ..................................................

**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child read the text and answer.
(2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.
(3) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.



# TEST YOURSELF on Lesson 1




## Listening (14)

**1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):** استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ): (4)

1. Kira and Lena are from Egypt. ( )
2. There are many stores and shopping malls in Alexandria. ( )
3. Kira and Lena like to spend a lot of time sitting on the roof garden. ( )
4. People in Alexandria are very friendly. ( )





## Reading

**2 Read and match (A) with (B):** اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): (5)

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1. We serve traditional food ... | a. ( ) but I haven't been to any yet. |
| 2. The bank and the library ... | b. ( ) in hot summer days. |
| 3. I just like sitting on the roof garden, ... | c. ( ) and drinking sweet mint tea. |
| 4. There are some good museums, ... | d. ( ) using local ingredients. |
| 5. It's great to go to the beach ... | e. ( ) We like the people. |
| | f. ( ) are places in my town. |





## Writing

**3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Alexandria" using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر التالية: (5)

* Why do you love Alexandria?
* What can you do there?

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................



Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |



# STUDY




Lessons 2 & 3
• Let's find out!
• Don't run in the library!



## Vocabulary



**Listen, point, and say:** استمع، أشر وقل:

### Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| signs | علامات | structures | مبانٍ | papyrus | نبات البردى |
| scenes | مشاهد | occasions | مناسبات | feasts | أعياد |
| events | أحداث | vases | مزهريات | carriers | أوعية |
| symbol | رمز | pharaoh | فرعون | upstairs | الطابق العلوى |
| button | زر | shelf | رف | trash can | سلة القمامة |

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular verbs | | | أفعـــال منتظمة | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
| exist | توجد | existed | celebrate | يحتفل | celebrated |
| bury | يدفن | buried | push | يدفع | pushed |

### Expressions and Phrases

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| find out | يكتشف | waste time | يضيع الوقت |
| Stand back. | ارجع للخلف. | | |

### Definitions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| evidence | دليل | facts that show something is true | الحقائق التي تظهر أن شيئًا ما صحيح |
| monument | أثر | a building or statue | مبنى أو تمثال |
| painting | رسمة | a picture | صورة |
| artifact | تحف | objects like vases and pots which were made in the past | أشياء مثل المزهريات والأواني التي صنعت في الماضي |
| tomb | مقبرة | people were buried here when they died. | يدفن الناس هنا عندما يموتون |
| hieroglyphics | الهيروغليفية | a kind of writing using pictures and symbols | نوع من الكتابة باستخدام الصور والرموز |

**Parents' tips**

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.

## Let's find out!



**Look and read:** انظر واقرأ:

### How do we know so much about life in Ancient Egypt?

There is lots of **evidence**[1] that tells us about life in Ancient Egypt. Evidence is facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true.

هناك الكثير من الأدلة التى تخبرنا عن الحياة فى مصر القديمة. الدليل هو الحقائق أو العلامات التى تظهر بوضوح وجود شىء ما أو أنه صحيح.

| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | دليل |
| (2) | آثار |
| (3) | رسومات |
| (4) | تحف |
| (5) | اللغة الهيروغليفية |
| (6) | مقابر |

We can learn about buildings from ancient **monuments**[2]. These are structures that were built to celebrate important people.

يمكننا أن نتعلم عن المبانى من الآثار القديمة. تم بناء هذه المبانى للاحتفال بالأشخاص المهمة.

**Paintings**[3] are on walls or on papyrus. They show scenes of daily life, such as farmers working in the fields, or special occasions, such as feasts and special events.

الرسومات تتواجد على الجدران أو أوراق البردى. توضح الرسومات مشاهد من الحياة اليومية، كالفلاحين الذين يعملون فى الحقول، أو المناسبات الخاصة كالأعياد والأحداث المميزة.

**Artifacts**[4] are things from daily life like vases and water carriers that tell us how people lived.

التحف هى أشياء من الحياة اليومية كالمزهريات وأوعية المياة التى تخبرنا كيف عاش الناس.

**Hieroglyphics**[5] are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures. From hieroglyphics we can get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt.

اللغة الهيروغليفية هى كتابة مصرية قديمة باستخدام الرموز والصور. من اللغة الهيروغليفية يمكننا الحصول على دليل عن حياة القدماء المصريين.

Pharaohs and other important people were buried in beautiful **tombs**[6]. These also had other things people thought they might need and information about their life.

الفراعنة والشخصيات الهامة الأخرى كانت تدفن فى مقابر جميلة. وكان هناك أيضًا أشياء أخرى اعتقد الناس أنهم سيحتاجونها ومعلومات عن حياتهم.

### Check point

1. Why did Ancient Egyptians build monuments?

   ..............................................................................................

2. What are hieroglyphics?

   ..............................................................................................

**Parents' tips**

Help your child read the passages correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرات بطريقة صحيحة.





## Language Focus

**Listen, point, and say:** استمع، أشر وقل:

### Imperatives صيغة الأمر

We use imperatives to tell someone to do or not to do something.

نحن نستخدم صيغة الأمر لنقول لشخص ما أن يفعل أو لا يفعل شيئًا ما.

### Form

Imperatives don't usually begin with a subject like "you, she or they". Imperatives usually start with a verb.

صيغة الأمر عادة لا تبدأ بفاعل مثل «أنت، هى أو هم». صيغة الأمر عادة تبدأ بالفعل.

### Affirmative imperatives:

Use the "infinitive" without "to" :

نستخدم الفعل فى المصدر من غير "to":

**Infinitive** (مصدر الفعل) ...... .

e.g.



**Pick** up that trash, please. التقط تلك القمامة، من فضلك.

e.g. **Stand** up! قف!



### Negative imperatives:

Use "Don't + infinitive" without "to":

نستخدم "Don't + infinitive" بدون "to":

**Don't + Infinitive** (مصدر الفعل) ...... .

e.g.



**Don't eat** in the library, please. لا تأكل فى المكتبة، من فضلك.

e.g. **Don't talk** loudly, please. لا تتحدث بصوت عالٍ، من فضلك.



**Parents' tips**

Help your child use the imperatives correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم صيغة الأمر بطريقة صحيحة.

## Asking about and giving directions: السؤال والإجابة عن الاتجاهات :

A: Excuse me, how do I get to + place (المكان)?
B: Go straight.

A: Where is the + place (المكان), please?
B: Cross the road.

A: Is there (a place المكان) near here?
B: Turn right/left.



e.g.

Excuse me, how do I get to the library, please?
عذرًا، كيف أصل إلى المكتبة رجاءً؟



Go straight, turn right. It's on your left.
اتجه مباشرة ثم انعطف يمينًا. إنه على يسارك.



### Check point

**Read and correct the underlined mistakes:** اقرأ وصحح ما تحته خط:

1 Don't eating in the classroom. (..................)

2 A: When is the post office? B: It's at the end of the street. (..................)

3 Looking left and right before you cross the road. (..................)







# PRACTICE Lessons 2 & 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4



1 (Didn't – Don't – Do – Doesn't) write in the book.
2 (Where – When – What – How) is the clothes store?
3 Please Ali, (doesn't – does – don't – didn't) waste your time.
4 Don't (shouts – shout – is shouting – shouting). Speak quietly.

## 2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6



There is lots of evidence that tells us about life in Ancient Egypt. Ancient monuments can tell us a lot about the past. They were built to celebrate important people. Paintings on walls or on papyrus show scenes of daily life. Artifacts are the things from daily life like vases and water carriers that tell us how people lived. Hieroglyphics are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures. From hieroglyphics we can get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt. Tombs also had other things people thought they might need and information about their life.

### A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 .......................... on walls or on papyrus show scenes of daily life.
a) People b) Paintings c) Stones d) Monuments

2 Hieroglyphics are Ancient Egyptian writing .......................... and pictures.
a) people b) symbols c) stones d) monuments

### B Answer the following questions:

3 Why were the monuments built?
..........................................................................

4 Summarize the text in two sentences.
..........................................................................

## 3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 2



1 hieroglyphics are Ancient egyptian writing symbols and pictures.
..........................................................................

2 how do we know about Ancient Egypt
..........................................................................







# TEST YOURSELF | on Lessons 2 & 3





13



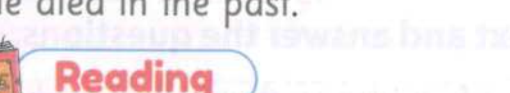
## Listening

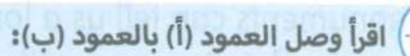
**1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):** استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ): 4

1. We can learn about buildings from ancient monuments. ( )
2. Paintings show scenes of nature. ( )
3. Artifacts are like vases and water carriers. ( )
4. Artifacts tell us how people died in the past. ( )



## Reading





**2 Read and match (A) with (B):** اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): 5

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1. "Evidence" is ... | a. ( ) vases and pots. |
| 2. "Hieroglyphics" are writing ... | b. ( ) to celebrate important people. |
| 3. Monuments were built... | c. ( ) where people were buried there when they died. |
| 4. Artifacts are objects like ... | d. ( ) facts that show something is true. |
| 5. A "tomb" is a place ... | e. ( ) cool to wear in hot days. |
| | f. ( ) symbols and pictures. |



## Writing

**3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:** أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة: 4

1. were – Pharaohs – beautiful – tombs – in – buried.
   ..............................................................
2. in – Don't – library, – the – please – eat.
   ..............................................................
3. mobile – use – phone – Don't – here – your.
   ..............................................................
4. do – How – the – to – museum – I – get?
   ..............................................................



Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |



# STUDY



Lesson 4

# Gabi Learns a Lesson





**Listen, point, and say:** استمع، أشر وقل:

### Main Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| villager | قروي | ibis | طائر أبو منجل |
| jerboa | الجربوع | market traders | تجار السوق |

### Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| sack | شوال | lost (adj.) | تائه / مفقود |
| strange-looking (adj.) | غريب المنظر | branches | فروع |
| unkindly (adj.) | بطريقة غير عطوفة | crowds | الجماهير |
| funny-looking (adj.) | مضحك المنظر | creature | مخلوق |
| rudely | بطريقة وقحة | foolish (adj.) | أحمق (غبي) |
| stranger | غريب | | |

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular verbs | | | أفعال منتظمة | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
| recognize | يتعرف على | recognized | pretend | يتظاهر | pretended |
| entertain | يسلي | entertained | apologize | يعتذر | apologized |
| **Irregular verbs** | | | **أفعال غير منتظمة** | | |
| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
| give | يعطي | gave | begin | يبدأ | began |

### Expressions and Phrases

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| walk far | يمشي بعيدًا | tell the truth | يقول الحقيقة |
| get dark | تظلم (يصبح الجو مظلمًا) | go alone | يذهب بمفرده |
| ask for help | يطلب المساعدة | | |

**Parents' tips**

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.

## Gabi Learns a Lesson

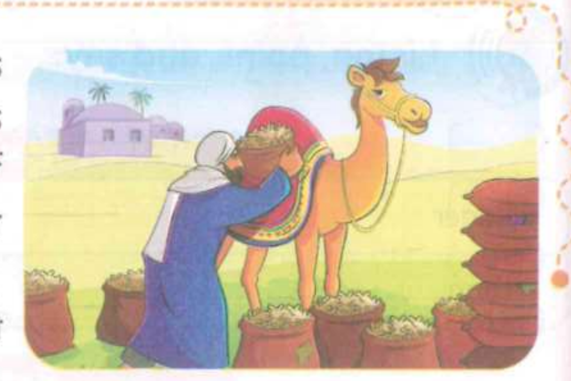


**Look and read:** انظر واقرأ:

### The beginning

**1**

One day, a villager wanted to sell his beans in the market, but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, said, "Give me the sacks of beans – I will take them to the market for you."
Gabi walked along the road. He turned left and then right and then left again. Soon, Gabi didn't recognize[1] the road.

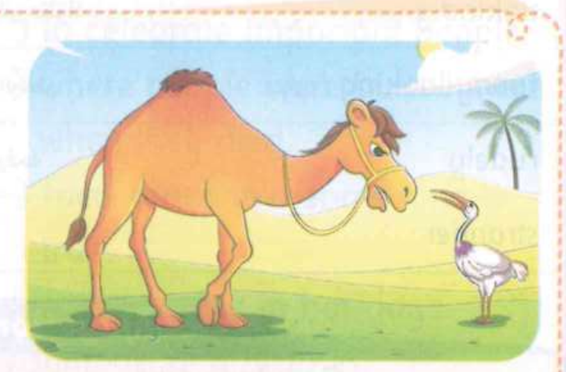


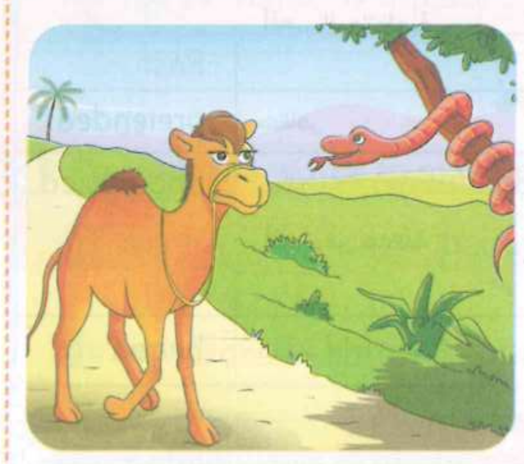
(1) يتعرف على

### The middle

**2**

"Are you lost[2]?" called an ibis. Gabi had never seen such a strange-looking[3] bird.
"No, I'm not lost," pretended Gabi. Gabi didn't know that the ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way.





Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the branches of a tree.
"You look lost," said the snake.
"No, I'm not," said Gabi – again he wasn't telling the truth[4]. "Anyway, even if I was, you can't help – you haven't even got legs," he said unkindly.
Gabi didn't know that the snake went to the market every day to entertain[5] the crowds

(2) تائه/ مفقود
(3) غريب المنظر
(4) يقول الحقيقة
(5) يسلى

**Parents' tips**

الترجمة:

- فى يوم من الأيام أراد القروى أن يبيع الفول فى السوق. لكنه لم يستطع أن يمشى بعيدًا. عرض عليه جمله (جابى) قائلًا «دعنى آخذ شوال الفول - سآخذه إلى السوق من أجلك».
- مشى جابى؟ على طول الطريق، انعطف يسارًا ثم يمينًا ثم يسارًا مرة أخرى. بعدها لم يتعرف جابى على الطريق.
- «هل أنت تائه؟» صاح طائر المنجل. لم ير جابى من قبل طائرًا غريب الشكل كهذا.
- «لا. أنا لست تائهًا.» تظاهر جابى ولم يكن يعرف أن طائر المنجل يستطيع أن يطير فوق الأرض ويخبره بالطريق.
- رأى جابى ثعبانًا يشاهده من على أغصان الشجرة.
- «هل أنت تائه؟» قال الثعبان.
- «لا، أنا لست تائهًا.» قال جابى - مرة أخرى لم يكن يقول الحقيقة. «على أى حال فحتى لو كنت تائهًا، لما استطعت مساعدتى - أنت ليست لديك أرجل حتى. قال جابى بطريقة غير عطوفة. لم يكن جابى يعرف أن الثعبان يذهب إلى السوق كل يوم ليقوم بعروض لتسلية الجماهير.





### The end

**3**



It began to get dark. Gabi saw a little animal on the road in front of him.
"What a funny-looking creature[6]. Look at those enormous ears," he thought to himself.
"Hello," said the jerboa. "Do you need any help?"
"No, I don't!" replied Gabi rudely. Gabi didn't know that the jerboa could hear the sounds of the market traders.
"OK, good night then," called the jerboa.
Soon, it was completely dark and Gabi understood he needed the animals' help. He knew he was foolish[7] and he was sorry. He decided to go to sleep, and to apologize[8] and to ask for their help the next day.

(6) مخلوق
(7) أحمق (غبى)
(8) يعتذر

### Check point

1. Where was the camel going?
.................................................................
2. Did the snake help the camel?
.................................................................

### Vocabulary Check

Compound adjectives: Adjectives that consist of two words with a dash in the middle.

**الصفات المركبة:** هى صفات تتكون من كلمتين بينهما شرطة صغيرة.

e.g. strange-looking bird

e.g. funny-looking creature

**Parents' tips**

Help your child read the story correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:

بدأ الجو يظلم. رأى جابى حيوانًا صغيرًا على الطريق أمامه.
«ياله من مخلوق مضحك الشكل. انظروا إلى هذه الأذن الضخمة.» فكر جابى مع نفسه.
«مرحبًا، هل تحتاج إلى أى مساعدة؟» قال الجربوع.
«لا . لا أحتاج» رد جابى بطريقة فظة ولم يكن يعرف أن الجربوع يمكنه أن يسمع أصوات تجار المدينة.
«حسنًا إذن، ليلة سعيدة.» صاح الجربوع.
قريبًا أصبح الجو مظلمًا تمامًا وفهم جابى أنه يحتاج لمساعدة تلك الحيوانات . عرف أنه كان أحمق وشعر بالأسف. قرر جابى أن ينام ويتأسف لتلك الحيوانات ويطلب مساعدتهم فى اليوم التالى.

# Pronunciation



**Listen, point, and say:** استمع، أشر وقل:

**The same sound is sometimes spelled in different ways.**

يتم تهجئة نفس الصوت أحيانًا بطرق مختلفة.

| /əʊ/ | /aɪ/ | /ɔɪ/ | /eɪ/ |
|---|---|---|---|
| go يذهب | bite قضمة / عضة | boy ولد | make يصنع |
| show يعرض | right يمين | toy لعبة | play يلعب |
| below أسفل | time وقت | coin عملة | ache ألم |
| grow يزرع | bike دراجة | enjoy يستمتع | ate أكل |
| wrote كتب | write يكتب | point يشير إلى | eight ثمانية |
| | | | bake يخبز |

**Parents' tips**
Help your child listen to the words and say them correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويقولها بطريقة صحيحة.





# Math

**Read and notice:** اقرأ ولاحظ:

An estimated answer isn't the actual answer. It's a good guess.

الإجابة التقديرية ليست الإجابة الحقيقية ولكنها تخمين جيد.

e.g.

1 How much will ten tomatoes, five carrots, and two eggplants be, please?
كم سيكون سعر عشر ثمرات من الطماطم، خمس جزرات وثمرتين من الباذنجان، من فضلك؟

2 They will be around 80 Egyptian pounds.
سيكون السعر حوالي 80 جنيهًا.




We can use the following expressions to talk about estimated answers:
يمكن استخدام التعبيرات التالية للتحدث عن الإجابات التقديرية :

- It's around .... - It's about .... - It's near .... - It's close to ...

بمعنى "تقريبًا/حوالي".

**Parents' tips**
Help your child use estimated answers correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم الإجابات التقديرية بطريقة صحيحة.






# Lesson 4

14

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل من العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): 5

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 The snake haven't got any legs, ... | a. ( ) B: It's around 30. |
| 2 The sound in the word "ache" ... | b. ( ) and tell the camel the way. |
| 3 A: What is 12 + 17? | c. ( ) but he goes to the market every day. |
| 4 The ibis could fly above the land ... | d. ( ) No, I don't. |
| 5 The camel knew he was foolish ... | e. ( ) is the same as in the word "make". |
| | f. ( ) and he apologized for the animals. |



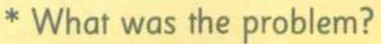
## 2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة: 4

1. offered – help – Gabi – the – to – villager.
   ..............................................................................
2. could – land – The ibis – the – above – fly.
   ..............................................................................
3. will – They – 50 – Egyptian – be – pounds – around.
   ..............................................................................
4. enjoys – The – with – playing – boy – toys – his.
   ..............................................................................

## 3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Asking for help" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر التالية: 5

* What was the problem?
* Who could help you?

..............................................................................
..............................................................................
..............................................................................


Parents' tips

(1) Help your child read and match. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
(2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.
(3) Help your child write about the given topic. ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن الموضوع المعطى.





# TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 4



## Listening

12

## 1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

1. Gabi, the ..............................., was lost.
2. The jerboa has enormous ............................. .
3. The jerboa can ............................. the sounds of the market traders.
4. Gabi knew he was ............................. and he apologized.



## Reading



## 2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

Gabi is a helpful camel. He took the sack of beans to sell it for the villager. On his way to the market, he got lost. First, Gabi met an ibis. The ibis offered to help the camel as he could fly above the land and tell him the way. But Gabi pretended* he isn't lost and refused any help. Then, Gabi met a snake. The snake offered to help as he goes to the market every day to entertain the crowds. Gabi refused any help and he was unkind to the snake.

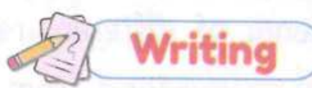
pretended* تظاهر بـ

### A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Gabi is a/an .............................
   a) ibis b) camel c) snake d) villager
2. The underlined word "entertain" means to make people feel ............................. .
   a) happy b) sad c) tired d) sick

### B Answer the following questions:

3. How did Gabi help the villager? .............................
4. Who offered to help Gabi? .............................



## Writing

## 3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 2

1. no, I'm not lost
   ..............................................................................
2. do you need any help
   ..............................................................................


Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |



# STUDY



## Lessons 5 & 6
# Writing / Project

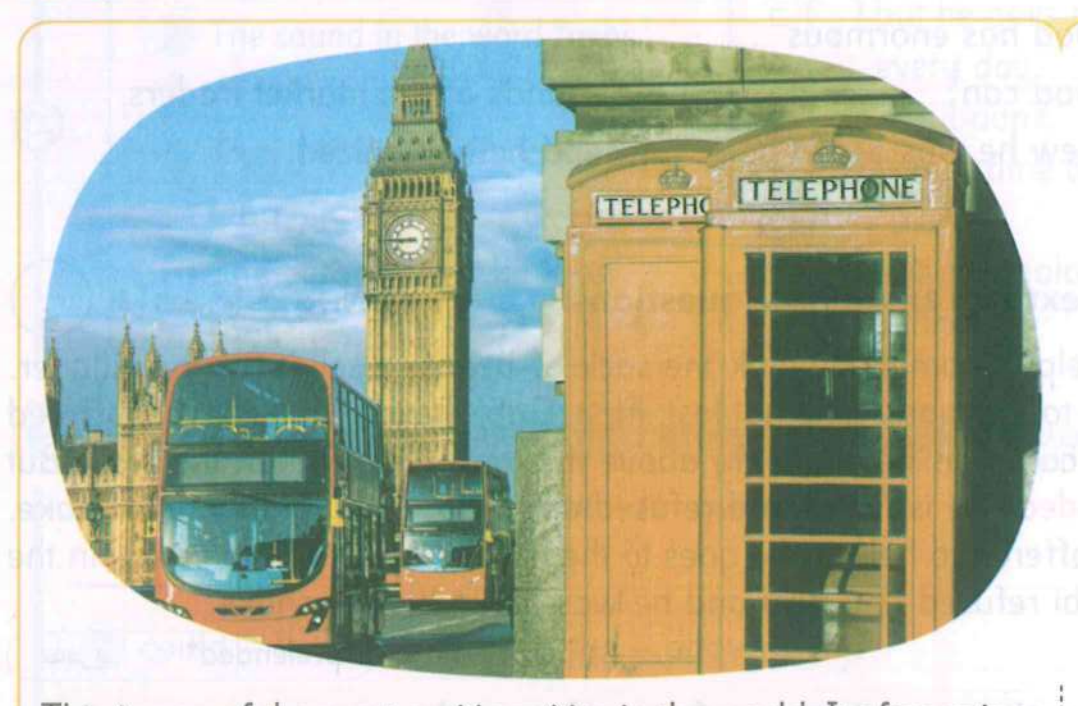


## Writing





### Look and read: انظر واقرأ:




This is one of the most exciting cities in the world. It often rains here, but it doesn't matter [1] because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions [2]. You will see famous [3] places like Buckingham Palace [4], theaters [5], and the British Museum [6]. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames [7] and go under the famous bridges. All the walking around will make you hungry! But don't worry, there are plenty of different restaurants to choose from. You can find delicious [8] food from all over the world here!

| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | لا يهم |
| (2) | أماكن جذب سياحى |
| (3) | مشهور |
| (4) | قصر باكنجهام |
| (5) | مسارح |
| (6) | المتحف البريطانى |
| (7) | نهر التمز |
| (8) | لذيذ |

**Parents' tips**

Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

**الترجمة:**

إنها واحدة من أكثر المدن الممتعة فى العالم. عادة ما تمطر هنا ولكن هذا لا يهم حيث يوجد العديد من الأشياء الممتعة لتقوم بها. يمكن أن تذهب فى جولة إلى الأماكن السياحية المختلفة فى الحافلة الحمراء الكبيرة. سوف يمكنك رؤية العديد من الأماكن المشهورة كقصر باكينجهام والمسارح والمتحف البريطانى. يمكنك أن تذهب فى رحلة مريحة بالقارب فى نهر التمز وتعبر من أسفل الكبارى المشهورة. كل هذا التجول سيجعلك تشعر بالجوع. ولكن لا تقلق، يوجد العديد من المطاعم المختلفة التى يمكنك أن تختار من بينها.
يمكنك أن تجد هنا طعامًا لذيذًا من جميع أنحاء العالم!





## NEW ALAMEIN



### Look and read: انظر واقرأ:




There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake [1] right in the middle of [2] the city. You can also visit the beautiful International Park [3]. If you want to learn about the fascinating [4] history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center [5]. There are some amazing treasures [6] there.

I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.

| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | بحيرة |
| (2) | فى المنتصف |
| (3) | الحديقة الدولية |
| (4) | خلاب |
| (5) | المركز الأثرى |
| (6) | كنوز |

### Steps of writing a paragraph to describe your town or city:

1. Write notes about the good things of your town. اكتب ملاحظات عن الأشياء الجيدة فى مدينتك.
2. Write about famous tourist attractions. اكتب عن أماكن الجذب السياحى فى مدينتك.
3. Write about the location. اكتب عن الموقع.
4. Write about the history. اكتب عن تاريخ مدينتك.

**Parents' tips**

Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

**الترجمة:**

هناك العديد من الأشياء المثيرة التى يمكنك القيام بها فى العلمين الجديدة. المدينة على الشاطئ لذا يمكنك زيارة البحر البارد عندما يكون الجو حارًا. يبلغ طول هذا الشاطئ الجميل ١٤ كم! توجد أيضًا بحيرة خضراء كبيرة فى وسط المدينة. يمكنك أيضًا زيارة الحديقة الدولية الجميلة. إذا كنت ترغب فى التعرف على التاريخ الخلاب للمنطقة ، فقم بزيارة المركز الأثرى. هناك بعض الكنوز المدهشة.
لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك فى العلمين الجديدة.

# Our perfect town



## Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



In our perfect town[1], there is a big zoo right next to[2] the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed[3] the animals.

It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark[4] that is always open. It's free[5] to go in!

| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | مدينة رائعة |
| (2) | بجانب |
| (3) | يطعم |
| (4) | حديقة ألعاب مائية |
| (5) | مجانًا |
| (6) | نزهات عائلية |



There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food, like fresh bread and fresh fruit and vegetables.

There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family picnics[6] in the shade.

This is our perfect town!

**Parents' tips**

Help your child read and notice the steps of making a poster about his/her town.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويلاحظ خطوات كتابة ملصق عن مدينته.

**الترجمة:**

في بلدتنا الرائعة، يوجد حديقة حيوانات كبيرة بجانب المدرسة. يمكننا الذهاب هناك في كل ظهيرة بعد الحصص الدراسية. يمكننا أن نساعد في إطعام الحيوانات.

إن الجو حقًا حار في مدينتنا، لذلك توجد حديقة ألعاب مائية مفتوحة دائمًا، يمكنك الدخول بلا مقابل.

يوجد العديد من الأسواق الرائعة التي تبيع جميع أنواع الأطعمة المختلفة، كالخبز الطازج والفواكه والخضراوات الطازجة.

توجد حديقة كبيرة بها العديد من الأشجار لذلك يمكننا الذهاب في نزهات عائلية في الظل.

هذه هي مدينتنا الرائعة!



# PRACTICE



## Lessons 5 & 6



12

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

### 1 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

My name is Ola. I live in a big apartment with my family in New Alamein. New Alamein is a new Egyptian city. It's a wonderful place with many tourist attractions. The International Park is a very famous place to visit. There is also a large lake, a theme park, and shopping malls. The beach is over 14 kilometers long. The Archaeological Center is my favorite place to visit. There are some amazing treasures there. You can learn about the fascinating history of the area.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. Ola lives in a/an .................... Egyptian city.
   a) new b) old c) ancient d) past
2. The .................... is Ola's favorite place to visit.
   a) International Park b) lake
   c) Archaeological Center d) beach

**B Answer the following questions:**

3. How long is the beach in New Alamein?
   ..........................................................
4. What can you do at the Archaeological Center?
   ..........................................................



### 2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4

1. eat – What – can – we – in – London?
   ..........................................................
2. beach – city – The – on – is – the.
   ..........................................................
3. plenty – of – There – different – are – restaurants.
   ..........................................................
4. in – go – free – is – It – to.
   ..........................................................



### 3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 2

1. don't miss the beautiful International Park
   ..........................................................
2. what can you do in london?
   ..........................................................

**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child read the text and answer.
(2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.
(3) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.



# TEST YOURSELF | on Lessons 5&6



## Listening

14

**1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):** استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ): 4

1. It never rains in London. ( )
2. There are many tourist attractions there. ( )
3. Buckingham Palace is in Egypt. ( )
4. You can go on a boat trip in River Thames. ( )



## Reading

**2 Read and match (A) with (B):** اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): 5

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1. You can go on a big red bus ... | a. ( ) is 14 kilometers long! |
| 2. The beach in New Alamein ... | b. ( ) has many amazing treasures. |
| 3. There is a green lake ... | c. ( ) and visit amazing tourist attractions. |
| 4. You can go on a relaxing boat trip ... | d. ( ) often rains there. |
| 5. The Archaeological Center ... | e. ( ) in the middle of the city. |
| | f. ( ) on the River Thames. |



## Writing

**3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "My perfect town" using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر التالية: 5

* Where do you live?
* What things can tourists do in your city?

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................



Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |

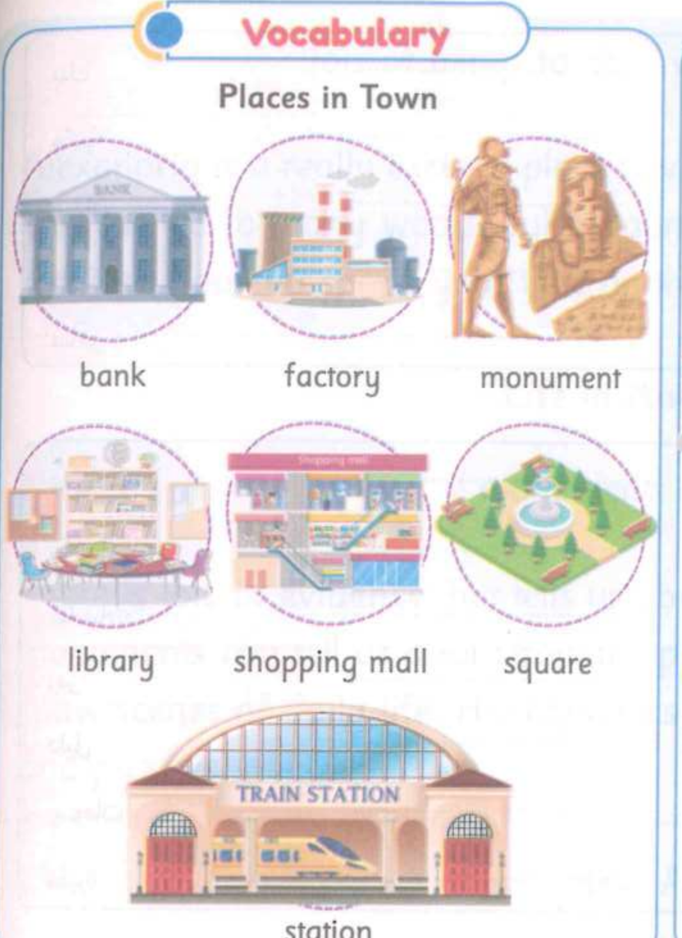


# UNIT 10 REVIEW



## Vocabulary

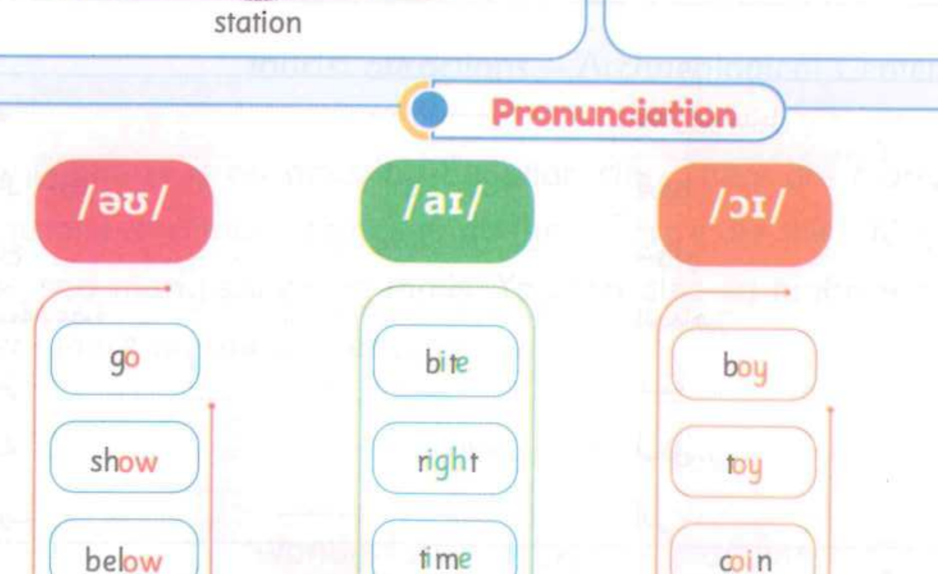
Places in Town




## Language Focus




## Pronunciation



UNIT 10

# Check Your Vocabulary



## Lesson 1

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| .............................. | مول تجارى | .............................. | بنك |
| .............................. | أثر | .............................. | مكتبة |
| .............................. | محطة | .............................. | ميدان |
| .............................. | أطباق | .............................. | مطاعم |
| .............................. | عادات | .............................. | متاجر |

## Lessons 2 & 3

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| .............................. | مبانٍ | .............................. | علامات |
| .............................. | مشاهد | .............................. | نبات البردى |
| .............................. | أعياد | .............................. | مناسبات |
| .............................. | فرعون | .............................. | رمز |
| .............................. | أثر | .............................. | دليل |
| .............................. | تحف | .............................. | رسومات |
| .............................. | الهيروغليفية | .............................. | مقبرة |

## Lesson 4

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| .............................. | طائر أبو منجل | .............................. | تائه |
| .............................. | قروى | .............................. | تجار السوق |
| .............................. | شوال | .............................. | فروع |
| .............................. | الجماهير | .............................. | قضمة / عضة |
| .............................. | عملة | .............................. | يخبز |
| .............................. | أسفل | .............................. | لعبة |
| .............................. | ألم | .............................. | مدرسة |

## Lessons 5 & 6

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| .............................. | أماكن جذب سياحى | .............................. | مشهور |
| .............................. | مسارح | .............................. | المركز الأثرى |
| .............................. | مذهل | .............................. | كنوز |



# WRITING TIME

### "Alexandria"

lots of things to do – wonderful restaurants

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There are lots of things to do there. You can go to many wonderful restaurants. You can visit different stores and markets. You can spend your time on the beach.

### "Life in Ancient Egypt"

monuments – paintings

There is lots of evidence that tells us about life in Ancient Egypt. Ancient monuments can tell us a lot about the past. Paintings on walls or on papyrus show scenes of daily life. Hieroglyphics are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures.

### "New Alamein"

tourist attractions – Archaeological Center

New Alamein is an amazing Egyptian city. There are many wonderful tourist attractions and many things to do there. There are the International Park, a big lake, and many shopping malls. You can also go to the Archaeological Center where there are many treasures.

### "My perfect town"

wonderful water park – shopping malls

My town is big and beautiful. There is a wonderful water park. It's the perfect place to visit in hot summer days. There are many shopping malls with a big kids area. Kids can go and enjoy playing for free. You can visit food markets, too. You will find foods from all over the world there.

## 1 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1. (Close – Closes – Is closing – Closed) the window, please.
2. Be quiet and (don't – isn't – aren't – weren't) eat in the classroom, please.
3. Don't (plays – playing – played – play) football in the street.
4. (Weren't – Wasn't – Don't – Didn't) walk on the grass.

## 2 Read and correct the underlined mistakes: اقرأ وصحح ما تحته خط: 4

1. Don't eats in the library. (..............................)
2. Hurries up! We will miss the bus. (..............................)
3. Going straight, then turn left. (..............................)
4. Takes an umbrella with you. (..............................)

## 3 Read and rewrite the following: اقرأ وأعد كتابة الآتي: 4

1. Is there a hotel near here, please? (Where...?)
..............................................................................
2. You shouldn't cross the road without looking. (Don't...)
..............................................................................
3. Please, can you sit down? (Sit...)
..............................................................................
4. You have to study well for your exam. (Study)
..............................................................................

**Parents' tips**
(1) Help your child read and choose. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار.
(2) Help your child read and correct. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويصحح.
(3) Help your child rewrite the sentences or questions correctly. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد كتابة الجمل أو الأسئلة بطريقة صحيحة.







### Listening

## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ): 4

1. There isn't any evidence to tell us about life in Ancient Egypt. (   )
2. Structures in ancient Egypt were built to celebrate important people. (   )
3. Ancient Egyptians drew paintings on walls and papyrus. (   )
4. Ancient Egyptian paintings don't show people's daily life. (   )

## 2 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

1. There is a big .............................. right next to my school.
2. In the zoo, we can help feed the .............................. .
3. It's really .............................. in my town.
4. It's .............................. to go in the water park in my town.



### Reading

## 3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):  5

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1. Monuments tell us about ... | a. (   ) is the same as in the word "below". |
| 2. Paintings often show ... | b. (   ) No, thank you. |
| 3. The sound in the word "go" ... | c. (   ) is a good guess. |
| 4. A: What are hieroglyphics? | d. (   ) structures in Ancient Egypt. |
| 5. An estimated answer ... | e. (   ) B: They are symbols and pictures. |
| | f. (   ) special occasions and events. |

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:  6

One day, a villager wanted to sell his beans in the market. But he couldn't walk far. His camel offered to help him and take the sack of beans to the market. The camel walked along the road. He turned right, then left, and then he turned right again. The camel didn't recognize the road and he thought he was lost. The camel then met a nice ibis who flew above the land and told him the right way. The camel thanked the ibis and they became friends.

correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

about a camel going to the ................... .

b) pool c) stadium d) market

was ................. as he didn't recognize the road.

b) excited c) lost d) helpful

following questions:

the villager want to do? ..........................................

he ibis help the camel? ..........................................

## Writing

ds to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4

You – cuisine – try – local – some of.

..........................................

– station – town – in – a – my.

..........................................

You – the – International – visit – beautiful.

..........................................

w – know – about – do – we – Egypt?

..........................................

following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: 2 SB

ndly please

..........................................

alexandria

..........................................

ph of FORTY (40) words on "New Alamein" using the ng elements: اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر التالية: 5

tourist attractions – Archaeological Center

..........................................

..........................................

# Unit 11 Getting out in the Fresh Air

## الخروج فى الهواء الطلق

### Unit Overview

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
  - listen, read, research, and write about nature trails.
  - recognize adjectives and adverbs.
  - learn words about nature.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن المتنزهات الطبيعية.
  - يتعرف على الصفات والأحوال.
  - يتعلم كلمات عن الطبيعة.

# Warm up

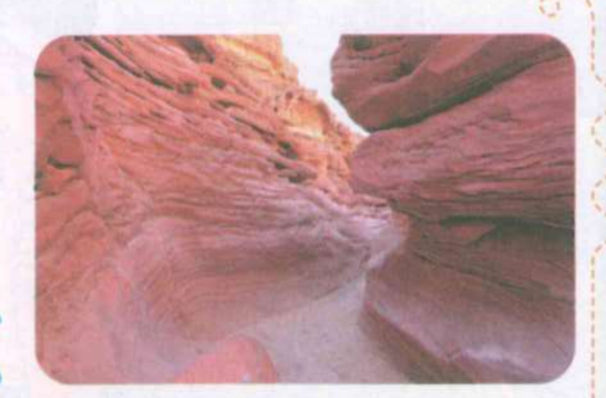


This unit is about nature and how it is important to go into the fresh air. It is also about going to nature trails like the Red Sea Mountain Trail.

تدور هذه الوحدة حول الطبيعة ومدى أهمية التنزه فى الهواء الطلق. تدور أيضًا حول الذهاب إلى المتنزهات الطبيعية مثل متنزه البحر الأحمر الجبلى.

## Did you know?

A fantastic hiking trail in Egypt is the Nuweiba Trail in Sinai. You can see the famous Colored Canyon there.



ممشى نويبع فى سيناء هو طريق رائع للمشى لمسافات طويلة فى مصر. يمكنك من هناك رؤية الوادى الملون الشهير.

## I can find it out!

Going into the fresh air is good because it reduces* stress* and helps improve our physical* and mental* health.



التنزه فى الهواء الطلق جيد لأنه يقلل من التوتر ويحسن صحتنا الجسدية والعقلية.

| reduce* | يقلل | stress* | توتر | physical* | جسدى | mental* | عقلى |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|



# STUDY



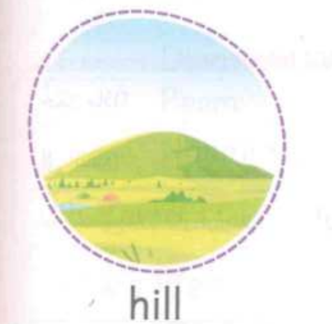
## Lessons 1 & 2
- Getting out in Natur
- Nature Trail Weekend



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



## Main Vocabulary



hill تل

leaf ورقة شجر



village قرية



city مدينة

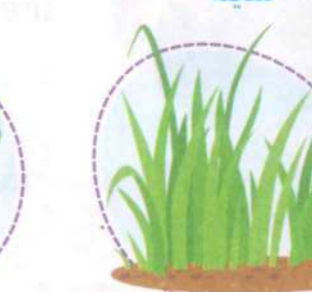
rock صخرة



plant نبات



tree شجرة



grass حشائش



stream مجرى مائى



Wadi Degla وادى دجلة



Blue Lagoon البحيرة الزرقاء

### Extra vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| wooden (adj.) | خشبى | trunk | جذع الشجرة | background | خلفية |
| views | مناظر | lake | بحيرة | Dahab | دهب (مدينة مصرية) |
| brave (adj.) | شجاع | invitation | دعوة | diver | غواص |
| tortoise | سلحفاة | active (adj.) | نشيط | designer | مصمم |



### Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (tu) فى كلمة (nature) ينطقان /tʃ/ (تش).

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular verbs | | | أفعـــال منتظمـة | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
| decide | يقرر | decided | dive | يغطس | dived |
| contact | يتصل بـ | contacted | invite | يدعو | invited |
| accept | يقبل | accepted | | | |

## Expressions and Phrases

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| take photos | يلتقط صورًا | Guess what? | خمن ماذا؟ |
| like best | يفضل | Bye for now! | إلى اللقاء! |
| Life's great! | كل شيء بخير. | Can't wait to see you! | لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك! |

## Definitions

| Word | Definition |
|---|---|
| stream مجرى مائى | It's like a river, but smaller. إنه كالنهر، ولكن أصغر. |
| tree شجرة | It is a very tall plant with branches and wooden trunk. إنه نبات طويل جدًا له فروع وجذع خشبى. |
| village قرية | It is much smaller than a town or city. إنها أصغر بكثير من بلدة أو مدينة. |
| rock صخرة | It is hard. It is a large stone. إنها صلبة. إنها حجر كبير. |
| nature trail متنزه طبيعى | A place you go for a hike in nature to see all the plants and animals. مكان تذهب إليه لتتنزه فى الطبيعة وترى النباتات والحيوانات. |



**Note**

To make plurals, we usually add an -s: لتكوين صيغة الجمع، نقوم بإضافة s:

e.g. house → houses

- If the word ends in -y preceded by a consonant letter, we usually take off the -y and add -ies:

e.g. city → cities

- If the word ends in -f, we usually take off the -f and add -ves:

e.g. leaf → leaves

**Parents' tips**

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.

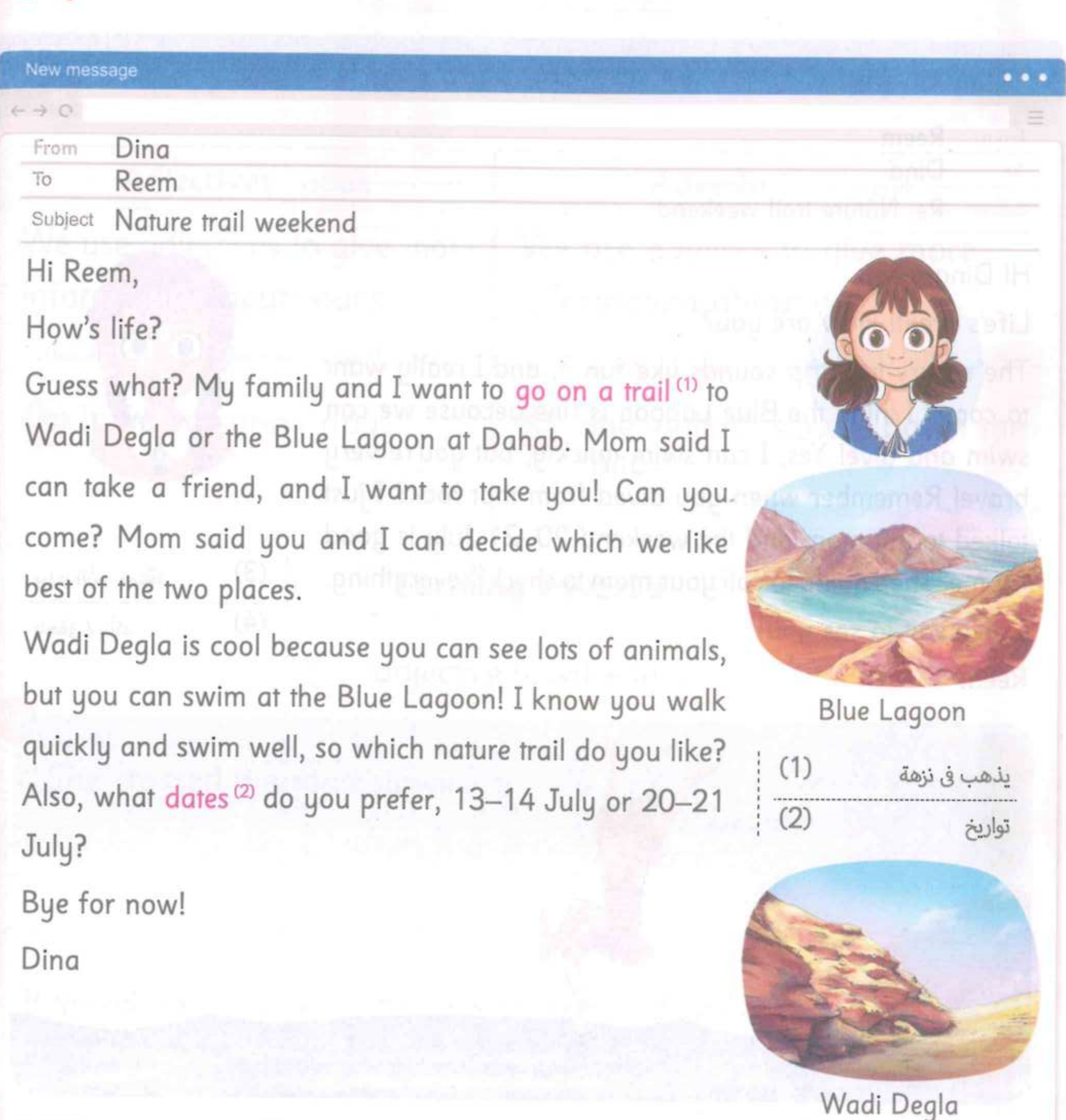




## Nature Trail Weekend



**Look and read:** انظر واقرأ:



New message

From Dina

To Reem

Subject Nature trail weekend

Hi Reem,

How's life?

Guess what? My family and I want to go on a trail [1] to Wadi Degla or the Blue Lagoon at Dahab. Mom said I can take a friend, and I want to take you! Can you come? Mom said you and I can decide which we like best of the two places.

Wadi Degla is cool because you can see lots of animals, but you can swim at the Blue Lagoon! I know you walk quickly and swim well, so which nature trail do you like? Also, what dates [2] do you prefer, 13–14 July or 20–21 July?

Bye for now!

Dina



(1) يذهب فى نزهة

(2) تواريخ

**Parents' tips**

Help your child read the email correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ البريد الإلكترونى بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:

أهلًا ريم،

كيف تجرى الأمور؟

خمنى ماذا؟ نريد أنا وعائلتى أن نذهب فى نزهة إلى وادى دجلة أوالبحيرة الزرقاء فى دهب. قالت أمى إننى يمكننى اصطحاب صديقة، وأنا أريد اصطحابك! هل تستطيعين المجىء؟ قالت أمى إيمكننى أنا وأنت أن نقرر أى المكانين أفضل. وادى دجلة رائع لأنه يمكنك من رؤية الكثير من الحيوانات، ولكن يمكنك العوم فى البحيرة الزرقاء! أنا أعرف أنك تستطيعين المشى بسرعة والسباحة جيداً، إذًا أى متنزه طبيعى تحبين؟ كذلك ما هى التواريخ التى تفضلينها، ١٣-١٤ أو ٢٠-٢١ من يوليو؟

إلى اللقاء!

دينا

## Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

New message

From Reem
To Dina
Subject Re: Nature trail weekend

Hi Dina,

Life's great! How are you?

The nature trail trip sounds like fun [3], and I really want to come! I think the Blue Lagoon is fine because we can swim and dive! Yes, I can swim quickly, but you're very brave! Remember when you dived from that rock? I just talked to my mom and the weekend 20–21 July is good for me. She's going to call your mom to check [4] everything.

Can't wait to see you!

Reem

(3) يبدو الأمر ممتعًا
(4) يتحقق / يتأكد



Send

**Parents' tips**
Help your child read the email correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ البريد الإلكترونى بطريقة صحيحة.
الترجمة:
أهلا دينا،
كل شىء بخير! كيف حالك؟
تبدوا رحلة المتنزه الطبيعى أمرًا ممتعًا، وأنا حقا أريد المجىء. أعتقد أن البحيرة الزرقاء جيدة لأننا يمكننا السباحة والغطس، صحيح أنه يمكننى أن أسبح بسرعة، ولكنك شجاعة للغاية! هل تتذكرين حين غطست من أعلى تلك الصخرة؟ لقد تحدثت للتو مع أمى وعطلة ٢٠-٢١ يوليو جيدة بالنسبة لى. سوف تتصل أمى بأمك للتحقق من كل شىء.
لا أستطيع الانتظار حتى ألقاك!
ريم







# Language Focus

## Adverbs

### Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

| Adjectives الصفات | Adverbs الأحوال |
|---|---|
| We use adjectives to give more information about nouns. نستخدم الصفات لإعطاء معلومات أكثر عن الأسماء. | We use adverbs to give more information about verbs. نستخدم الظروف لإعطاء معلومات أكثر عن الفعل. |
| e.g. It was a sunny day. كان يومًا مشمسًا. | e.g. She walked slowly down the road. هى سارت ببطء فى الطريق. |

### Forming adverbs

adjective (الصفة) + ly....

e.g.

She crossed the road slowly.
عبرت الطريق ببطء.



If the adjective ends in -y, then delete the -y and add -ily:

إذا انتهت الصفة بـ -y، فاحذف -y وأضف -ily:



e.g.



He did his homework happily.
أدى واجبه المنزلى بسعادة.

There are some exceptions to the rule: هناك بعض الاستثناءات للقاعدة:

| Adjective الصفة | | Adverb الحال | |
|---|---|---|---|
| good | جيد | well | بطريقة جيدة |
| fast | سريع | fast | بطريقة سريعة |
| hard | جاد | hard | بجد |
| late | متأخر | late | متأخراً |
| early | مبكر | early | مبكراً |



e.g. - She speaks English well. (not goodly X)

- I study hard. (not hardly X).

- He drove the car fast. (not fastly X).

## Check point

**Read and correct the underlined words:** اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التى تحتها خط:

1. My friend is a nicely person. SB (..........................)
2. The tortoise walked slow across the grass. SB (..........................)
3. Shorouk is a hard worker. She works hardly. SB (..........................)






# PRACTICE Lessons 1 & 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1. My dad speaks Spanish (good – well – goodly – best).
2. It was raining (heavier – heavy – heavily – heaviest) when I left home. SB
3. The player ran (quick – quickly – quickness – quickest) and won the race.
4. Dina is a (bravely – brave – bravest – bravery) diver.



## 2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6



Dina and Reem are best friends. They love to go on trails outdoors. They went on a hike in the desert trail last weekend. The trail was longer than they thought, but it was more beautiful, too. It was around 57 kilometers around the mountain. Dina and Reem walked slowly in the afternoon than they did in the morning because they were tired. In the evening, they camped in a small cave in the mountain. They sang songs and told one another funny stories.



### A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The text is about Dina and Reem going for ..........................
   a) training b) hiking c) swimming d) running
2. The pronoun "It" refers to the .......................... in the desert.
   a) pool b) trail c) square d) mountain

### B Answer the following questions:

3. How long was the trail? ..........................
4. Why did Reem and Dina walk slowly in the afternoon? ..........................

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة: 4



1. the – slowly– She – road – crossed.
..........................
2. see – wait – Can't – you – to!
..........................
3. like – do – Which – trail – you – best – nature?
..........................
4. can – Blue – at – You – Lagoon – the – swim.
..........................



# TEST YOURSELF on Lessons 1 & 2

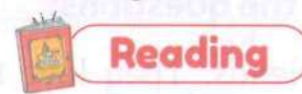


14

## Listening

**1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):** استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ): 4

1. Sara likes to spend the weekend at the shopping mall. ( )
2. Sara wants to spend this weekend outdoors. ( )
3. You can see many animals at Wadi Degla. ( )
4. You can't swim at the Blue Lagoon. ( )



## Reading

**2 Read and match (A) with (B):** اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): 5

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1. The nature trail trip ... | a. ( ) B: She swam well. |
| 2. A "village" is much smaller ... | b. ( ) She is a nice singer. |
| 3. A "stream" is like a river, ... | c. ( ) sounds like fun. |
| 4. A: How did she swim? | d. ( ) than a town or a city. |
| 5. Sahar sings nicely. | e. ( ) a mountain near the lake. |
| | f. ( ) but smaller. |

## Writing



**3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "A nature trail" using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 5

- Where did you go? - What did you do there?

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................



Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |





# STUDY

Lesson 3

# The Red Sea Mountain Trail



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

## Main Vocabulary






| snacks وجبات خفيفة | hat and sunglasses قبعة ونظارة شمسية | hiking shoes حذاء تريض | map خريطة |
|---|---|---|---|





| water bottle زجاجة مياه | blanket بطانية | scarf وشاح | sweater سترة |
|---|---|---|---|

## Extra vocabulary

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| long-distance (adj.) طويل المسافة | Maaza people قبيلة معازة | trading التجارة |
| routes طرق | hunting الصيد | Eastern Desert الصحراء الشرقية |
| hikers متريضين | geography جغرافيا (تضاريس) | prepared (adj.) مستعد |
| tent خيمة | warm (adj.) دافئ | sand رمال |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | Past | Present | Past |
|---|---|---|---|
| preserve يحافظ على | preserved | follow يتبع | followed |
| complete يكمل | completed | protect يحمي | protected |



## Definitions

| hiking (n) التنزه | a long walk in the countryside نزهة طويلة في الريف |
|---|---|

## Expressions and Phrases

| | |
|---|---|
| run for يمتد لمسافة | community tourism project مشروع سياحي مجتمعي |
| for centuries لقرون | it takes around ten days يستغرق حوالي ١٠ أيام |

**Parents' tips**

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.



## Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The Red Sea Mountain Trail was the first long-distance hiking[1] trail to open in Egypt. It runs for around 170 kms through the wonderful mountains near Hurghada. It is a community tourism project. It helps the local Maaza people preserve their culture and history. The trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes[2] in the Eastern Desert. The Maaza people used these routes for centuries. They look after the trail carefully and work as guides. They tell the hikers about the geography and history of this wonderful place. They also tell the hikers about their fascinating[3] culture. It takes around ten days to complete the trail.

| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | المشى لمسافات طويلة |
| (2) | طرق |
| (3) | جذاب |

### Check point

1. How long is the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

   ..................................................................................................

2. What do the Maaza people do?

   ..................................................................................................

### Vocabulary Check

Route: is a small, side road that people can move on.

**طريق فرعى:** طريق جانبى صغير يمشى الأشخاص عليه.

Road: is usually bigger, cars and trucks can move on.

**طريق رئيسى:** عادة ما يكون أكبر، كالطرق التى تتحرك عليها السيارات والشاحنات.

**Parents' tips**
Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

**الترجمة:**
إن متنزه البحر الأحمر الجبلى أول متنزه للمشى لمسافات طويلة يتم افتتاحه فى مصر. يمتد لمسافة حوالى ١٧٠ كم عبر الجبال الرائعة بالقرب من الغردقة. إنه مشروع سياحى مجتمعى. يساعد المشروع قبيلة معازة المحليون على الحفاظ على ثقافتهم وتاريخهم. يتبع المنتزه طرق التجارة والصيد القديمة فى الصحراء الشرقية. استخدمت قبيلة معازة هذه الطرق لقرون. يعتنى قبيلة معازة المحليين المحليين بالمنتزه بعناية ويعملون كمرشدين. يخبرون المتنزهين عن جغرافية هذا المكان الرائع وتاريخه. ويخبرونهم كذلك عن ثقافتهم الرائعة. يستغرق الأمر حوالى عشرة أيام لإكمال المنتزه.







## Listen, read, and role play: استمع، اقرأ، وتبادل الأدوار:



**Interviewer**
Hi Sherif, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?
مرحبًا شريف، ما الذى تأخذه فى متنزه البحر الأحمر الجبلى؟

**Sherif**
Hi! Well, I want to protect my feet so I'm taking some hiking shoes. I know there are a lot of hills and rocks so I don't want to fall over! I'm also going to take some snacks from home so I don't get hungry.
أهلاً حسنًا ، أريد حماية قدمى لذا سآخذ بعض أحذية التريض. أعلم أن هناك الكثير من التلال والصخور لذا لا أريد السقوط! سأقوم أيضًا بأخذ بعض الوجبات الخفيفة من المنزل حتى لا أشعر بالجوع.

**Interviewer**
Hi Ramy, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?
مرحبًا رامى، ما الذى تأخذه فى متنزه البحر الأحمر الجبلى؟

**Ramy**
My friend said it gets very hot on the trail in the places where there are no streams, so I'm taking a hat for my head. I'm also going to take a blanket in case I get cold at night.
قال صديقى إن الجو يصبح شديد الحرارة على الممشى فى الأماكن التى لا توجد بها مجارى مائية ، لذلك سآخذ قبعة لرأسى وسأحضر أيضًا بطانية فى حال أصبت بالبرد فى الليل.



**Interviewer**
Hi Lama, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?
مرحباً لمى، ما الذى تأخذينه فى متنزه البحر الأحمر الجبلى؟



**Lama**
Someone told me you can sometimes get sand in your eyes on the Red Sea Mountain Trail, so I'm taking a scarf to protect my head and eyes. The other important thing for me is to take lots of water bottles - I seem to drink more than other people so I want to be prepared.
أخبرنى أحدهم أنه يمكنك أحيانًا أن تصاب بالرمال فى عينيك على متنزه البحر الأحمر الجبلى ، لذلك سآخذ وشاحًا لحماية رأسى وعينى. الشىء الآخر المهم بالنسبة لى هو أن آخذ الكثير من زجاجات المياه ويبدو أننى أشرب أكثر من الآخرين لذلك أريد أن أكون مستعدة.

**Interviewer**
Hi Nesma, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?
مرحباً نسمة، ماذا الذى تأخذينه فى متنزه البحر الأحمر الجبلى؟





**Nesma**
I love checking the route so I'm taking a map. And I'm going to take my cool sunglasses too to protect my eyes. It's going to be such fun!
أنا أحب التحقق من الطريق لذلك سآخذ خريطة. وسوف آخذ نظارتى الشمسية الرائعة أيضًا لحماية عينى. سيكون هذا ممتعًا!



•Remembering •Understanding •Applying •Analyzing •Evaluating •Creating

## 1 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

We are on the Red Sea Mountain Trail. Here what we are taking on the trail. Sherif is taking sunglasses to protect his eyes, as the sun can get very bright on the walk. Ramy is taking a water bottle, as he gets thirsty when he hikes. Shaza is really good at reading the map to tell us where to go. We should take a scarf to protect our heads and necks, as there's a wind in the afternoon.

### A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The text is about .................. on the trail.
a) swimming b) diving c) hiking d) fishing

2 Sherif needs to take .................. to protect his eyes.
a) sunglasses b) water bottle c) map d) rackets



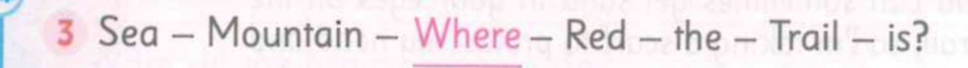
### B Answer the following questions:

3 What can we do with a map? ..................

4 Mention what they are taking on the trail. ..................

## 2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4

1 thirsty – hike – I – when – get – I
..................



2 the – to – Take – eyes – sunglasses – protect – your.
..................

3 Sea – Mountain – Where – Red – the – Trail – is?
..................

4 look – carefully – The Maaza people – after – trail – the.
..................



## 3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 2

1 what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail
..................

2 The red Sea Mountain Trail is 170 kilometers
..................

**Parents' tips**
(1) Help your child read the text and answer. ساعد طفلك ان يقرأ النص ويجيب.
(2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.
(3) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.







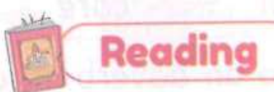


14



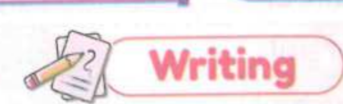

## 1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

1 The Red Sea Mountain .................. is in Egypt.
2 The Red Sea Mountain Trail is around .................. kilometers long.
3 The Red Sea Mountain Trail .................. though mountains near Hurghada.
4 The Maaza people preserve their .................. and share it with hikers.




## 2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): 5

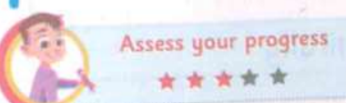
| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 I get thirsty when I hike, ... | a. ( ) to protect your head and neck. |
| 2 A map is useful ... | b. ( ) so remember to take a hat and sunglasses. |
| 3 You should take a scarf ... | c. ( ) so I always take a water bottle. |
| 4 "Hiking" is a long walk ... | d. ( ) the wind and sand. |
| 5 The sun is shining brightly today, ... | e. ( ) in the countryside. |
| | f. ( ) because it tells you where to go. |




## 3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "The Red Sea Mountain Trail" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 5

| Fact File | |
|---|---|
| Where is it? | In Egypt near Hurghada. |
| How long is it? | Around 170 km. |

..................
..................
..................
..................
..................



Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |



Lesson 4

# Word Building





## Language Focus

### The suffixes -ful and -fully



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

1 We can change the noun into an adjective by adding -ful.

يمكننا تحويل الاسم إلى صفة عند إضافة -ful إليه:

e.g. help مساعدة → helpful متعاون | care حرص → careful حريص

2 We can change the noun into an adverb by adding -fully.

يمكننا تحويل الاسم إلى ظرف بإضافة -fully إليه:

e.g. hope يأمل → hopefully بشكل مفعم بالأمل | pain ألم → painfully بشكل مؤلم

Notice the formation of adjectives and adverbs in the following table:

لاحظ تكوين الصفات والظروف في الجدول الآتي:

| Word | Adjective | Adverb |
|---|---|---|
| wonder دهشة | wonderful مدهش | wonderfully بشكل مدهش |
| beauty جمال | beautiful جميل | beautifully بشكل جميل |
| joy فرح | joyful مَرِح | joyfully بشكل مَرِح |
| meaning معنى | meaningful هادف | meaningfully بشكل هادف |
| pain ألم | painful مؤلم | painfully بشكل مؤلم |
| care عناية | careful حريص | carefully بحرص |
| stress ضغط عصبي | stressful مجهد | stressfully بشكل مرهق |
| thought فكرة | thoughtful عميق التفكير | thoughtfully بعناية |

## Check point

**Read and complete:** اقرأ وأكمل:

| Noun | Adjective | Adverb |
|---|---|---|
| joy | .................... | .................... |
| .................... | .................... | carefully |
| .................... | stressful | .................... |
| pain | .................... | .................... |
| .................... | .................... | beautifully |

Parents' tips

Help your child use the suffixes "-ful" and "-fully" correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم اللاحقة «-ful» و «-fully» بطريقة صحيحة.





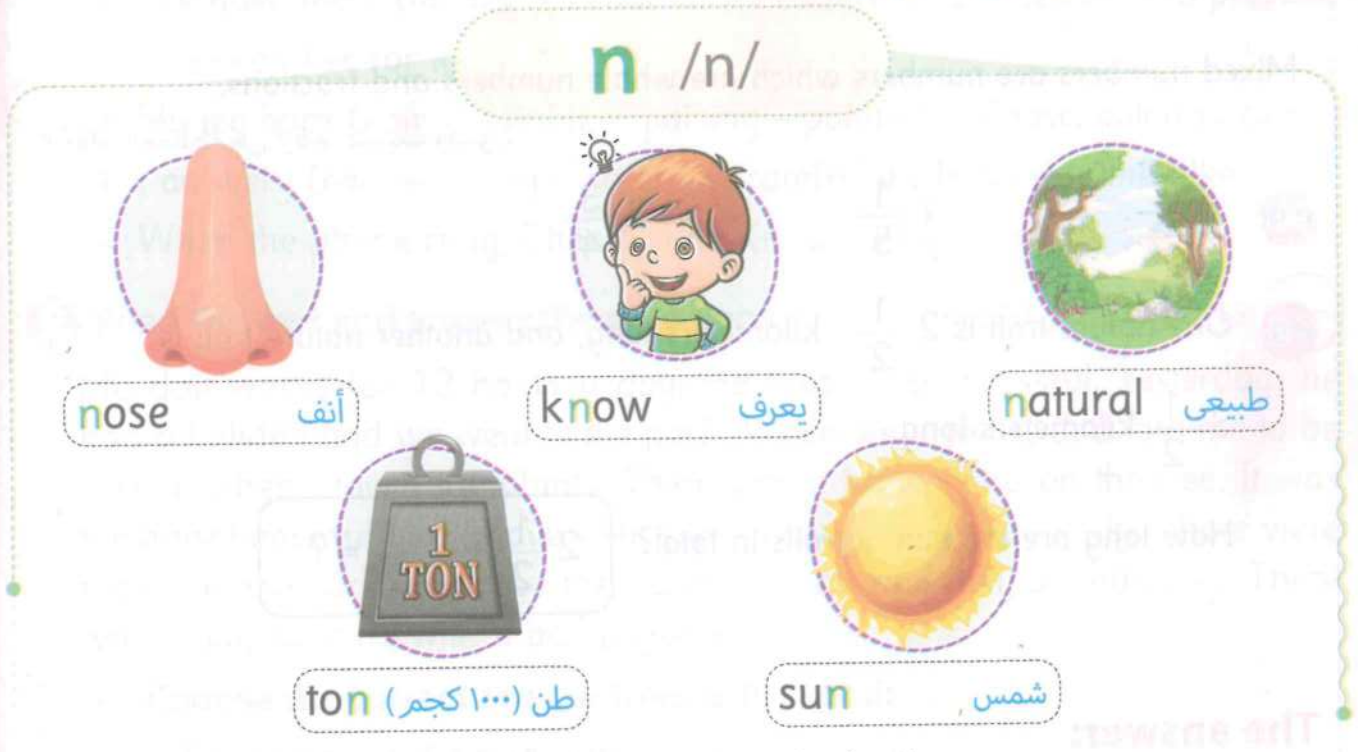
## Pronunciation



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

You make the /n/ sound by blocking the air in your mouth with the front of your tongue.

أنت تُصدر الصوت /n/، عن طريق سد الهواء في فمك بمقدمة لسانك.




You make the /ŋ/ sound by blocking the air with the back of your tongue.

أنت تُصدر الصوت /ŋ/، عن طريق سد الهواء بالجزء الخلفي من لسانك.




Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the words and say them correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويقولها بطريقة صحيحة.



# Math



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

## Adding mixed numbers

Mixed numbers are numbers which are whole numbers and fractions.

الأرقام المختلطة هي أرقام صحيحة وكسور.

e.g. $6\frac{2}{3}$ $1\frac{1}{5}$ $2\frac{3}{4}$

e.g. One nature trail is $2\frac{1}{2}$ kilometers long, and another nature trail is $3\frac{1}{2}$ kilometers long.

How long are the nature trails in total? $2\frac{1}{2} + 3\frac{1}{2} = ?$

## The answer:

1. Add the whole numbers first: $2 + 3 = 5$

قم بجمع الأرقام الصحيحة.

2. Add the fractions together: $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = \frac{2}{2} = 1$

قم بجمع الكسور.

3. Add this to the whole number 5, and the total is 6.

قم بعد ذلك بجمع الرقم الصحيح والرقم الكلي هو ٦.

**Parents' tips**

Help your child add mixed numbers correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يجمع الأرقام المختلطة بطريقة صحيحة.



# PRACTICE Lesson 4



14

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1. She gave me a (beauty – beautiful – beautifulness – beautifully) present. I thanked her for it.
2. My leg hurts (pain – painful – paining – painfully). Please, call a doctor.
3. I am very (care – caring – careful – carefully) when I ride the bike.
4. When the phone rang, I heard a big (ring – king – bang – sing).

## 2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

My dad works for 12 hours a day. He says it's so stressful. Yesterday, he had a holiday and we went to the park. When we arrived, dad told me to be careful when I touch the plants. There was a brown bird on the tree. It was the most beautiful bird I have ever seen. It could sing beautifully. There were rabbits in the park. We gave them some carrots and they ate hungrily. There was a dog running with a ball joyfully.

### A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Everything in the park was ..................
   a) stressful b) painful c) wonderful d) careful
2. The word "stressful" means ..................
   a) nice b) very tiring c) pretty d) quiet

### B Answer the following questions:

3. How did the rabbits eat the carrots? ..................
4. Summarize the text in two sentences. ..................

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4

1. The – stands – quietly – rabbit – park – the – in.
   ..................
2. hungrily – bowl – ate – from – The cat – the.
   ..................
3. big – wearing – ring – Is – king – a – the?
   ..................
4. walked – the trail – Hany – happily – along.
   ..................



**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child read and choose.
(2) Help your child read the text and answer.
(3) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.



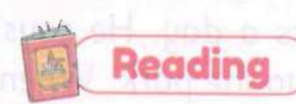


## Listening

11

**1 Listen and complete:** استمع وأكمل: 4

1. Lama read a .................... yesterday.
2. The story was about a .................... .
3. The king was wearing a big .................... .
4. The phone .................... and he heard a big bang.



## Reading

**2 Read and match (A) with (B):** اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): 5

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1. She packed her suitcase ... | a. ( ) is the same in "tongue". |
| 2. The sound /ŋ/ in "king" ... | b. ( ) I saw on the trail. |
| 3. The noun for the adjective "beautiful" ... | c. ( ) with a lot of care. |
| 4. It was the most wonderful animal ... | d. ( ) He says it's very stressful. |
| 5. My dad works for 12 hours. | e. ( ) is "beauty". |
| | f. ( ) is the same in "ton". |



## Writing

**3 Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 2

1. how long are the nature trails

..................................................................................................

2. he's not looking at the sun

..................................................................................................



Assess your progress

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |







## Writing

**Look and read:** انظر واقرأ:








| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | يقوم بجولة في الصحراء |
| (2) | يستقل (يصطحب) |
| (3) | يحضر |



**Parents' tips**
Help your child read the chat correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ المحادثة الهاتفية بطريقة صحيحة.

## How to write a text message

1 Use phrases to talk about plans: (Are you free on the weekend?/ That sounds like fun./ That sounds great./ Cool!/ Awesome!).

استخدم العبارات للتحدث عن الخطط: (هل أنت متفرغ فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟/ هذا يبدو ممتعًا./ هذا يبدو رائعًا./ حسنًا!/ رائع!)

2 Use set phrases for making suggestions: (How about/ What about meeting up?/ Let's meet at 3.).

استخدم عبارات محددة لتقديم الاقتراحات: (ماذا عن / ماذا عن اللقاء؟ / هيا نتقابل فى الساعة ٣.)

3 Use emojis to make the conversation fun: Use emojis to show things you want to represent.

e.g. 🌵 a cactus for the desert.

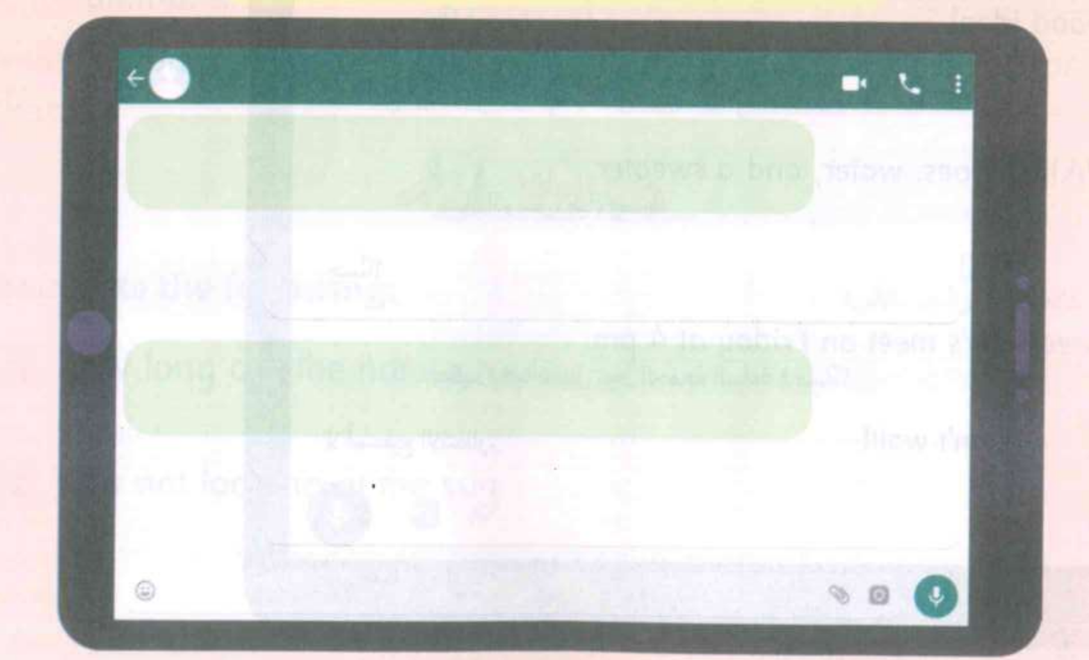
استخدم الرموز التعبيرية لجعل المحادثة ممتعة: استخدم الرموز التعبيرية لإظهار الأشياء التى تريد تمثيلها ، على سبيل المثال 🌵 صبار يدل على الصحراء.

## Check point

**Write a text message to your friend of FORTY (40) words about "Inviting her to visit you" using the following guiding elements:**

**اكتب رسالة نصية من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:**

want to come - can't wait







## Project



**Listen, point, and say:** استمع، أشر وقل:



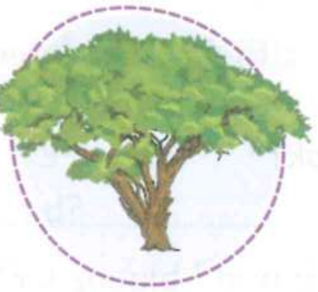
cactus
نبات الصبار



palm tree
نخيل



desert snail
حلزون الصحراء

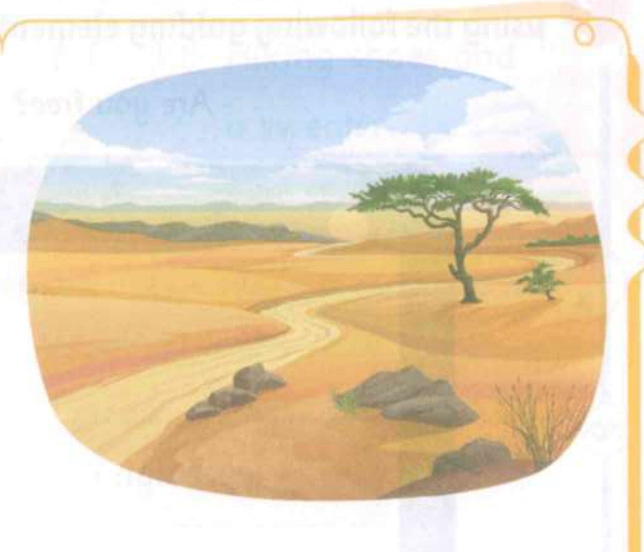


tamarisk tree
شجرة الطرفاء



jerboa
الجربوع

Hiking in the desert can be wonderful and relaxing. The sunlight and the natural landscapes of the mountains are fascinating. You can do many activities along with hiking such as camping and swimming in the lake. There are amazing lake views where you can exercise and relax. You can also find amazing desert creatures along the trail such as desert snail and jerboa.



**Parents' tips**

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.






# Lessons 5 & 6

13

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

A: Hi Malak! Are you ............(1)............ on the weekend?

B: Sure! What ............(2)............ we do?

A: My mom and dad want to do a ............(3)............ hike. Do you want to come?

B: Yes, that sounds like fun!

A: What should I bring?

B: Hiking shoes, water, and a ............(4)............ .

## 2 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 2

1 are you free on the weekend, malak?

..........................................................................................

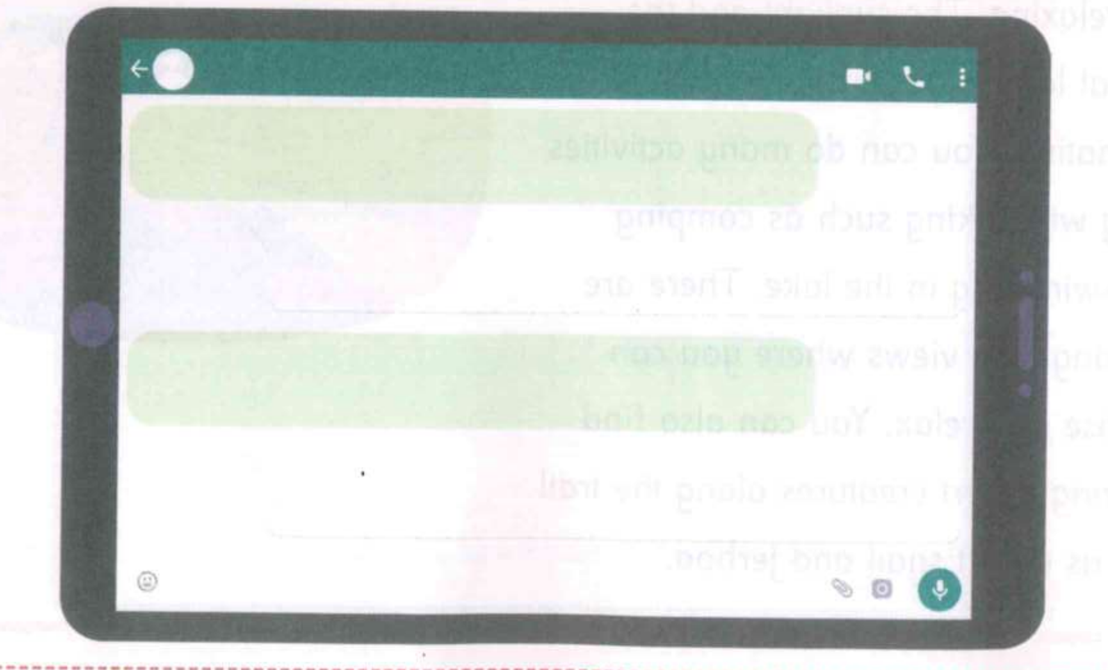
2 Let's meet on friday at 4 pm

..........................................................................................

## 3 Write a text message to your friend of FORTY (40) words about "Meeting up" using the following guiding elements: اكتب رسالة نصية من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 7

- Are you free? - How about?





**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child listen and complete. ساعد طفلك أن يسمع ويكمل.

(2) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.

(3) Help your child write about the given topic. ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن الموضوع المعطى.





# TEST YOURSELF on Lessons 5 & 6



13

### Listening

## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع وأكتب (صح) أو (خطأ): 4

1 Wael was making a presentation with Hamza. ( )

2 Hamza suggested that they would spend the evening together. ( )

3 Wael thought it's a bad idea. ( )

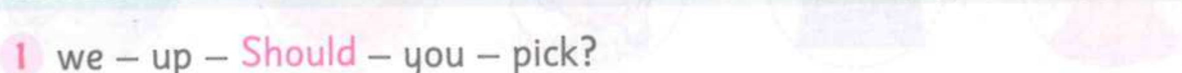
4 Hamza and Wael will play chess at the café. ( )



### Reading

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): 5

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 A: Are you free on the weekend? | a. ( ) Friday at 4 pm. |
| 2 A: What should I bring? | b. ( ) people in quiet areas. |
| 3 A: How about going on a trail? | c. ( ) B: Sure, I am! |
| 4 Great! Let's meet on ... | d. ( ) getting out into nature? |
| 5 How about ... | e. ( ) B: Great idea! |
| | f. ( ) B: Hiking shoes and a sweater. |



### Writing

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة: 4

1 we – up – Should – you – pick?

..........................................................................................

2 hiking – You'll – shoes – need – and – sunglasses.

..........................................................................................

3 like – lots – fun – That – sounds – of.

..........................................................................................

4 meeting – What – up – about – tonight?

..........................................................................................



| Assess your progress | < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ★★★★★ | Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |




## Vocabulary




## Language Focus

**Forming adverbs**

adjective + ly....

e.g. happy ⟶ happily

If the adjective ends in -y, then delete the -y and add -ily :

e.g.



He did his homework happily.

There are some exceptions to the rule:

| Adjective | Adverb |
|---|---|
| good | well |
| fast | fast |
| hard | hard |
| late | late |
| early | early |

## Pronunciation










### Lessons 1 & 2

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| مدينة | .................................. | جذع شجرة | .................................. |
| قرية | .................................. | ورقة شجرة | .................................. |
| تل | .................................. | نباتات | .................................. |
| مجرى مائي | .................................. | صخرة | .................................. |
| شجرة | .................................. | حشائش | .................................. |

### Lesson 3

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| وشاح | .................................. | خريطة | .................................. |
| زجاجة مياه | .................................. | حذاء تريض | .................................. |
| بطانية | .................................. | وجبات خفيفة | .................................. |
| التجارة | .................................. | قبعة ونظارة | .................................. |
| الصيد | .................................. | جغرافيا (تضاريس) | .................................. |

### Lesson 4

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| شمس | .................................. | طبيعي | .................................. |
| طن | .................................. | يعرف | .................................. |
| انفجار | .................................. | أنف | .................................. |
| أصابع | .................................. | لسان | .................................. |
| التريض | .................................. | ملك | .................................. |
| رن | .................................. | خاتم | .................................. |

### Lessons 5 & 6

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| حلزون الصحراء | .................................. | الجربوع | .................................. |
| نخيل | .................................. | شجرة الطرفاء | .................................. |

# WRITING TIME

"Nature trail weekend"

natural landscapes – lots of animals

Last week, I went on a trail with my family to the Blue Lagoon at Dahab. We started early in the morning. There were many wonderful natural landscapes. We could see lots of animals. We swam in the lake and the water was deep and blue.

"The Red Sea Mountain Trail"

How long is it ? – What can hikers do there?

The Red Sea Mountain Trail was the first long-distance hiking trail to open in Egypt. It runs for around 170 km through the mountains near Hurghada. Hikers can learn about the geography and history of this wonderful place and about its fascinating culture.

"Hiking in the desert"

wonderful and relaxing – camping and swimming

Hiking in the desert can be wonderful and relaxing. The sunlight and the natural landscapes of the mountains are fascinating. You can do many activities along with hiking such as camping and swimming in the lake. You can also find amazing desert creatures along the trail such as desert snail and jerboa.

"Tools to have for hiking"

hiking shoes - hat and sunglasses

Hiking is one of my favorite activities. There are many tools that you need to take with you while hiking. Hiking shoes are important because you move a lot and you need to feel comfortable. You will need sunglasses and a hat too, especially when it's hot.





PRACTICE



# More on Grammar




• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1. Sarah is a (careful – carefully – is caring – care) person.
2. I ran (quickest – quick – quickly – quickness) to the station.
3. You look (happiness – happy – happiest – happily).
4. I speak English (wellness – well – good – best).

## 2 Read and correct the underlined words: اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التى تحتها خط: 4

1. Samir is an active worker. He works <u>hardly</u>. (..........)
2. Salma is a <u>quickly</u> runner. (..........)
3. Jailan speaks <u>polite</u>. (..........)
4. Hatem is a clever designer. He designs <u>cleverest</u>. (..........)

## 3 Read and rewrite the following: اقرأ وأعد كتابة الآتى: 4

1. My Spanish isn't very good. (speak)
   ..........
2. He drives carefully. (careful)
   ..........
3. Lara is happy. She is eating her birthday cake. (happily)
   ..........
4. Mr. Mahmoud is a good teacher. (teaches)
   ..........

**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child read and choose. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار.
(2) Help your child read and correct. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويصحح.
(3) Help your child rewrite the sentences or questions correctly. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد كتابة الجمل أو الأسئلة بطريقة صحيحة.

# UNIT 11 AL ADWAA TEST



30



## Listening

**1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):** استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ): 4

1. The Red Sea Mountain Trail follows a modern route in Egypt. ( )
2. The Maaza people look after the trail carefully and work as guides.( )
3. The Maaza people never talk to hikers. ( )
4. The Maaza people tell the hikers about their fascinating culture. ( )

**2 Listen and complete:** استمع وأكمل: 4

1. Aser invites Ali for a .......................... .
2. Ali thinks it's a .......................... idea.
3. Ali and Aser are meeting at .......................... pm.
4. Ali and Aser are having a drink at Latino ..........................



## Reading

**3 Read and match (A) with (B):** اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): 5

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 A 'tree' is .... | a. ( ) is the same in "tongue". |
| 2 A: What dates do you prefer? | b. ( ) very well. |
| 3 A 'nature trail' is ... | c. ( ) a very tall plant. |
| 4 The sound /ŋ/ in "finger" ... | d. ( ) very good. |
| 5 My sister speaks French... | e. ( ) B: 20-21 July weekend is good for me. |
| | f. ( ) a place you go for a hike in nature. |

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

Dina wrote an email to Reem to invite her to go on a trail. Dina doesn't want to go on a trail alone. They can decide which they like best, Wadi Degla or the Blue Lagoon at Dahab. Wadi Degla is cool. They can see lots of animals, but they can swim at the Blue Lagoon! Reem prefers the Blue Lagoon because they can swim and dive. Dina is a brave swimmer; she could dive from a high rock. They decided to go at the weekend 20–21 July.





**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. There are lots of .......................... in Wadi Degla.
   a) stars b) parks c) animals d) games
2. Dina can swim ..........................
   a) slowly b) bravely c) quickly d) fast

**B Answer the following questions:**

3. Why does Reem prefer the Blue Lagoon? ..........................
4. What is the general idea of the text? ..........................



## Writing



**5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:** أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4

1. to – Take – eyes – sunglasses – your – protect – the.
..........................
2. about – How – coming – house – your – to?
..........................
3. but – A stream – river, – like – a – smaller – is.
..........................
4. beautifully – She – show – sang – the – during.
..........................



**6 Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 2

1. Dina and reem had a good time on the trail
..........................
2. what did you do on your trip
..........................

**7 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words on "A trip with my family" using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 5

Wadi Degla – sunglasses

..........................
..........................
..........................

Unit 12

# Vacations

# الإجازات



### Unit Overview

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
- listen, read, research, and write about vacations.
- think about environmental responsibility.
- learn about natural and man-made resources.
- practice using prepositions of time.
- listen to a conversation.
- learn about different types of triangles.
- read and say words with the "th" sound.
- think about his/her perfect vacation.
- write a diary entry for his/her best day on vacation.
- write an ad for a vacation destination.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
- يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الإجازات.
- يفكر فى المسئولية البيئية.
- يتعلم عن المصادر الطبيعية والاصطناعية.
- يتدرب على استخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت.
- يستمع إلى محادثة.
- يتعلم عن أنواع مختلفة من المثلثات.
- يقرأ وينطق كلمات بصوت الـ «th».
- يفكر فى إجازته المثالية.
- يكتب يومياته عن أفضل يوم له فى الإجازة.
- يكتب إعلانًا عن وجهته لقضاء عطلة.

## Warm up



This unit is about vacations, things you take on vacation or places you go on vacation. It talks about natural resources and man-made resources. It is about trips and diaries as well.

هذه الوحدة عن الإجازات، الأشياء التى تأخذها فى إجازة، أو الأماكن التى تذهب إليها فى إجازة. تتحدث الوحدة عن الموارد الطبيعية والموارد التى من صنع الإنسان. كما تدور الوحدة عن الرحلات والمذكرات اليومية.

### Did you know?

Egypt is one of the most popular vacation destinations* in the world. Millions of tourists visit Egypt every year. Cairo, Luxor, and Hurghada are among the most popular tourist destinations in the world.

مصر هى واحدة من أكثر الوجهات المشهورة لقضاء العطلات فى العالم. ملايين السياح يزورون مصر كل عام. تعد القاهرة والأقصر والغردقة من بين الوجهات السياحية الأكثر شهرة فى العالم.





### I can find it out!

The best places to visit in Egypt are: The Great Pyramids of Giza, The Egyptian Museum, Luxor Temple, Karnak Temple, Valley of the Kings, Khan Al Khalili bazaar, The Blue Hole in Dahab, and Sharm El-Sheikh.

أفضل الأماكن التى يمكنك زيارتها فى مصر هى: أهرامات الجيزة، المتحف المصرى، معبد الأقصر، معبد الكرنك، وادى الملوك، بازار خان الخليلى، بلو هول فى دهب، وشرم الشيخ.



Khan Al Khalili bazaar



The Blue Hole in Dahab

destinations* وجهات




# Lesson 1
# A world trip




## Main Vocabulary


Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:




ticket
تذكرة


suitcase
حقيبة سفر



hotel
فندق


tourist
سائح



passport
جواز سفر


swimming pool
حمام سباحة

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| trip | رحلة | husband | زوج | business | عمل |
| vacation | إجازة | India | الهند | Singapore | سنغافورة |
| luckily | لحسن الحظ | floor | دور | view | منظر |
| huge (adj.) | ضخم | roof | سطح | flight | رحلة جوية |
| bay | خليج | busy (adj.) | مزدحم | island | جزيرة |
| theme park | مدينة الملاهي | vanilla | فانيليا | Japan | اليابان |
| airport | مطار | camera | كاميرا | sunglasses | نظارة شمسية |





## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular verbs | | أفعال منتظمة | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Present | Past | Present | Past |
| receive يستقبل | received | arrive يصل | arrived |
| relax يستريح | relaxed | pack يحزم أمتعة | packed |
| **Irregular verbs** | | **أفعال غير منتظمة** | |
| Present | Past | Present | Past |
| get يحصل على | got | find يجد | found |

## Expressions and Phrases

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| straight away | على الفور | high-rise buildings | مبان شاهقة الارتفاع |
| take about six hours | تستغرق حوالى ست ساعات | in the middle of | فى المنتصف |
| go on a boat trip | يذهب فى رحلة على متن قارب | take photos | يلتقط الصور |



### Think

What does "Take only photos, leave only footprints" mean?
It means don't take anything you find in the woods ... like flowers, fungi, roots, animals, small trees, etc. But you can take pictures of them with your camera. The "leave only footprints" part means don't leave any trash behind you except for your footprints.

ماذا يعنى «التقط صورًا فقط، اترك آثار أقدام فقط»؟
هذا يعنى عدم أخذ أى شىء تجده فى الغابة ... مثل الزهور، والفطريات، والجذور، والحيوانات، والأشجار الصغيرة، وما إلى ذلك، ولكن يمكنك التقاط صور لها بالكاميرا. يعنى جزء «اترك آثار أقدام فقط» عدم ترك أى قمامة خلفك باستثناء آثار أقدامك.



### Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (s) فى كلمة (island) حرف صامت (silent) لا ينطق.
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (gh) فى كلمة (flight) حرفان صامتان (silent) لا ينطقان.

### Vocabulary Check

لاحظ أنه يمكننا تكوين صفة من كلمتين بوضع الـ (-) بينهما:

high (adj) عالٍ + rise (n) ارتفاع = high-rise (adj) شاهق الارتفاع

**Parents' tips**
Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.



## Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Today Mom received an email from her sister Nadia, and her husband Hany. They are on a business trip traveling around the world. Nadia and Hany were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the email aloud to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.

New message

From Nadiax@mail.com
To Samiax@mail.com
Subject My trip

Dear Samia,
Hello to you all from Singapore! It's hot here – about 36 degrees. Luckily, we've got a lovely hotel[1] room. We're on the 42nd floor. The view is beautiful and we can see the beach. There's a huge swimming pool[2] on the roof of the hotel! Can you believe it? The flight from India took about six hours, but it was comfortable and we both slept. It didn't take long to get through the airport when we arrived – we got our suitcases[3] straight away.

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise[4] buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the Bay is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. We spent a lot of time there. You really forget that you're in the middle of a busy city.

Yesterday, we went on a boat trip with some other tourists to an island. There is a theme park[5]. It was so much fun! After that, we visited the museum of ice cream! I had a 'Queen Bee' ice cream which is vanilla and honey with chocolate. It was great!

I hope you are all well. We will fly to Japan tomorrow and I'll send you another email when we arrive. Now I have to find our tickets[6] and passports and pack our suitcases again!
Love,
Nadia

Send

| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | فندق |
| (2) | حمام سباحة |
| (3) | حقائب السفر |
| (4) | شاهق الارتفاع |
| (5) | حديقة الملاهى |
| (6) | تذاكر |

**Parents' tips**

Help your child read the email and understand the new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ البريد الإلكترونى ويفهم الكلمات الجديدة.

**الترجمة:**

استلمت الأم اليوم بريد إلكترونى من أختها نادية وزوجها هانى. هما فى رحلة عمل حول العالم. كان نادية وهانى فى الهند الأسبوع الماضى، وهما فى سنغافورة هذا الأسبوع. تقرأ الأم البريد الإلكترونى بصوت عالى لابنتها رنا وابنها على.

عزيزتى سامية،

- مرحبًا بكم جميعًا من سنغافورة! الجو حار هنا - حوالى ٣٦ درجة. لحسن الحظ، لدينا غرفة فندقية جميلة. نحن فى الطابق ٤٢. المنظر جميل ويمكننا رؤية الشاطئ. يوجد حمام سباحة ضخم على سطح الفندق! هل يمكنك تصديق ذلك؟ استغرقت الرحلة من الهند حوالى ست ساعات، لكنها كانت مريحة وكلانا نام. لم يستغرق عبور المطار وقتًا طويلاً عندما وصلنا - لقد حملنا حقائبنا على الفور.
- سنغافورة مدينة رائعة. هناك الكثير من المبانى الشاهقة، ولكن هناك أيضًا العديد من المتنزهات والحدائق والأشجار للجلوس تحتها والاسترخاء. تعد حدائق الخليج مكانًا خاصًا حقًّا حيث توجد الزهور والنباتات من جميع أنحاء العالم. لقد أمضينا وقتًا طويلًا هناك. لقد نسينا حقًّا أننا فى وسط مدينة مزدحمة.
- بالأمس، ذهبنا فى رحلة بالقارب مع بعض السياح الآخرين إلى إحدى الجزر. يوجد مدينة ملاهى. كان الأمر ممتع للغاية! بعد ذلك قمنا بزيارة متحف الآيس كريم! تناولت آيس كريم «ملكة النحل» وهو الفانيليا والعسل مع الشوكولاتة. كان رائعًا! أتمنى أن تكونوا جميعًا بخير. سنسافر إلى اليابان غدًا وسأرسل لك بريدًا إلكترونيًا آخر عند وصولنا. الآن علىّ أن أجد تذاكرنا وجوازات سفرنا وأن أحزم حقائبنا مرة أخرى!



PRACTICE 

# Lesson 1





• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 We have got a lovely hotel room ... | a. ( ) I had a "Queen Bee" ice cream. |
| 2 I always take my phone ... | b. ( ) There're a lot of high-rise buildings there. |
| 3 The flight from India ... | c. ( ) really a special place. |
| 4 Singapore is a wonderful city. | d. ( ) on the 42nd floor. |
| 5 Gardens by the Bay is ... | e. ( ) so I can take photos. |
| | f. ( ) took about six hours. |



## 2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة:

1 are – Where – Hany – Uncle – Aunt – and – Nadia?

........................................................................

2 swimming – the roof – a huge – on – There's – pool.

........................................................................

3 lots – buildings – of – There – high-rise – are.

........................................................................

4 tomorrow – We – fly – to – will – Japan.

........................................................................

## 3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1 We will fly to japan tomorrow

........................................................................

2 Where did you stay in singapore

........................................................................

**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child read and match. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
(2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.
(3) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.



# TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 1



## Listening

15

### 1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

Mom : Where did you go on your ...............(1)...............?
Nadia : We were in India last week. This week, we are in Singapore.
Mom : What is ...............(2)............... about the city?
Nadia : There are lots of high-rise ...............(3)............... .The Gardens by the Bay is a really special place.
Mom : Singapore is a wonderful city. What did you do there?
Nadia : We went on a boat ...........(4)........... to an island where there is a theme park.



## Reading

### 2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

Nadia and her husband Hany are on vacation in Singapore. It's hot – about 36 degrees. They stay in a lovely hotel room on the 42nd floor. The hotel is special. There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel. The view is beautiful and they can see the beach. Yesterday, they went on a boat trip to an island. There is a theme park. After that, they visited the museum of ice cream! They had a "Queen Bee" ice cream which is vanilla and honey with chocolate.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 Nadia and Hany are ...............
a) at work b) at home c) on vacation d) at a friend's house

2 'Roof' means the ............... part of the hotel.
a) low b) deep c) top d) bottom

**B Answer the following questions:**

3 Why is the hotel special? ...............

4 What is "Queen Bee" ice cream? ...............



## Writing

### 3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "My trip to Singapore" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من أربعون (40) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المعطاة: 5



took about six hours – see the beach

...............

...............




| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |





# STUDY

Lesson 2

# Science





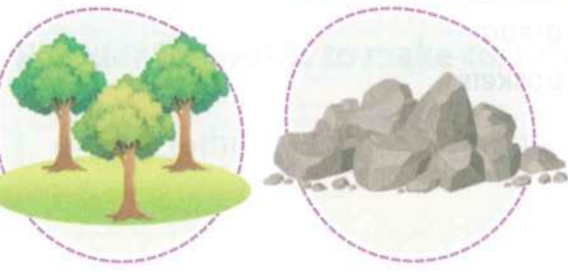
Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

## Resources

### Natural resources
المصادر الطبيعية

Materials or things we can find in nature. Trees and stone, are examples of natural resources.

مواد أو أشياء يمكن أن نجدها في الطبيعة. الأشجار والأحجار أمثلة على المصادر الطبيعية.



trees أشجار — stones أحجار



sunlight ضوء الشمس — gold ذهب



sand رمال — water مياه

### Man-made resources
مصادر من صنع الإنسان

Materials or things that humans have made. Plastic bottles and cotton clothes are examples of man-made resources.

مواد أو أشياء صنعها البشر. الزجاجات البلاستيكية والملابس القطنية أمثلة على المصادر من صنع الإنسان.



plastic bottle زجاجة بلاستيكية



cotton clothes ملابس قطنية



plastic plates أطباق بلاستيكية



bicycle دراجة

**Parents' tips**
Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.

## Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Farouk is a farmer in Aswan. Every morning, he wakes up and puts on his galabeya and leather shoes. He boils some water for tea and eats some bread and fruit.

Because Farouk lives in Aswan, he knows that the sun will shine most days. He is lucky that he lives on the fertile banks of the Nile so that he can use the water for his crops. Today, Farouk is harvesting the grain, putting it into baskets made from reeds, and taking it to sell at the market.

| Natural resources | مصادر طبيعية | Man-made resources | مصادر من صنع الإنسان |
|---|---|---|---|
| water | مياه | galabya | جلابية |
| tea | شاى | leather shoes | حذاء مصنوع من الجلد |
| fruit | فاكهة | bread | خبز |
| sun | الشمس | baskets | سلال |
| Nile | نهر النيل | | |
| crops | محاصيل | | |
| grain | حبوب | | |
| reeds | قصب | | |



Reem is going on vacation. She is traveling to Canada by plane. Today, she is packing her suitcase. She knows that there is often rain in Canada, so she is taking her umbrella. It can also be cold there, so she is packing a sweater. Reem loves swimming and asked her friend in Canada if there was a place she could swim. Her friend said she didn't live near the sea, but she could swim in a river or a lake if she wanted to.

| Natural resources | مصادر طبيعية | Man-made resources | مصادر من صنع الإنسان |
|---|---|---|---|
| rain | مطر | plane | طائرة |
| sea | بحر | suitcase | حقيبة سفر |
| river | نهر | umbrella | شمسية |
| lake | بحيرة | sweater | سترة |

**Parents' tips**

Help your child read the passage and understand the new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القطعة ويفهم الكلمات الجديدة.

الترجمة:

- فاروق مزارع فى أسوان. كل صباح، يستيقظ ويرتدى الجلابية والحذاء الجلدى. يغلى بعض الماء للشاى ويأكل بعض الخبز والفاكهة. لان «فاروق» يعيش فى أسوان، يعرف أن الشمس ستشرق فى معظم الأيام. إنه محظوظ لأنه يعيش على ضفاف النيل الخصبة حتى يتمكن من استخدام الماء لمحاصيله. واليوم يحصد فاروق الحبوب ويضعها فى سلال مصنوعة من القصب ويأخذه ليبيعها فى السوق.
- ريم ذاهبة فى إجازة. ستسافر إلى كندا بالطائرة. اليوم، تحزم حقيبتها. إنها تعلم أنه غالبًا ما تهطل الأمطار فى كندا، لذا فهى تأخذ معها الشمسية. يمكن أن يكون الجو باردًا أيضًا، لذا فهى تحزم سترة. تحب ريم السباحة وسألت صديقتها فى كندا عما إذا كان هناك مكان يمكنها السباحة فيه. قالت صديقتها إنها لا تعيش بالقرب من البحر، لكنها تستطيع السباحة فى نهر أو بحيرة إذا أرادت ذلك.









• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

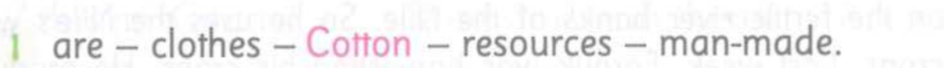
### 1 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): 5

**A**

1. Natural resources are things ...
2. Plastic bottles and cotton clothes ...
3. Reem is going on vacation.
4. Man-made resources are things ...
5. Sand, sunlight, and water ...

**B**

a. ( ) that humans have made.
b. ( ) are natural resources.
c. ( ) we can find in nature.
d. ( ) are man-made resources.
e. ( ) trees and stones.
f. ( ) She is traveling to Canada.



### 2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4

1. are – clothes – Cotton – resources – man-made.
 ..........................................................................
2. resources – Where – find – can – we – natural?
 ..........................................................................
3. are – Gold – sand – natural – and – resources.
 ..........................................................................
4. eats – Farouk – bread – and – fruits – some.
 ..........................................................................

### 3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: 2

1. Reem is traveling to canada by plane
 ..........................................................................
2. where does farouk live?
 ..........................................................................

**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child read and match.
(2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.
(3) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.



# TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 2



15

## Listening

**1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):** **استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):** 4

1. Reem is going on a business trip to Canada. ( )
2. Reem is traveling to Canada by train. ( )
3. It never rains in Canada. ( )
4. Reem loves swimming. ( )



## Reading

**2 Read the text and answer the questions:** **اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:** 6

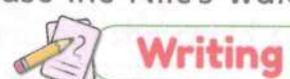
Farouk is a farmer in Aswan. He wakes up early every day in the morning. He puts on his galabeya and leather shoes. He boils some water for tea and eats some bread and fruits. In Aswan, the sun shines almost all the year. Farouk's farming land is on the fertile river banks of the Nile. So he uses the Nile's water for growing his crops. Last week, Farouk was harvesting his crops. He produced around two tons of grains. He put it into big reed baskets to sell them in the market.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. The verb "harvest" means to .................... crops.
   a) grow b) eat c) cook d) collect
2. Farouk stored his crops in .................... baskets.
   a) plastic b) reed c) glass d) mud

**B Answer the following questions:**

3. How does Farouk spend his day? ....................
4. What does Farouk use the Nile's water for? ....................



## Writing

**3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Resources" using the following guiding elements:** **اكتب فقرة من أربعون (40) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المعطاة:** 5

What are natural resources?
Give two or more examples of man-made resources.

....................
....................
....................



Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |



# STUDY Lesson 3







## A special trip



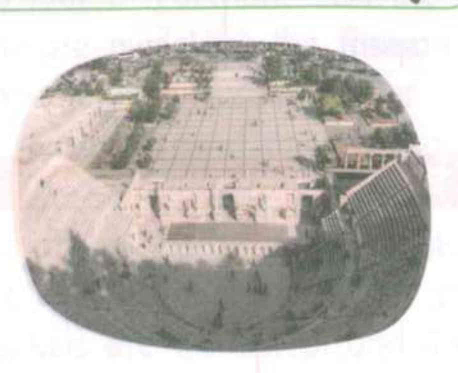
**Listen, point, and say:** **استمع، أشر وقل:**

### Main Vocabulary



Amman Citadel
قلعة عمان





Roman Amphitheater
المدرج الرومانى



Archaeological Museum
المتحف الأثرى



Abu Jaber Museum
متحف أبو جابر



Dead Sea
البحر الميت

### Extra vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Zambia | زامبيا | leaflet | منشور | Jordan | الأردن |
| Amman | عمان | traditional (adj.) | تقليدى | Jordanian (adj.) | أردنى |
| tour | جولة | local (adj.) | محلى | day trip | رحلة نهارية |
| ancient (adj.) | قديم | culture | ثقافة | art | فن |
| crafts | مصنوعات | mud | طين | diary | مذكرات يومية |
| chance | فرصة | handicrafts | أعمالٌ يدويّة | stalls | أكشاك |
| rug | سجادة صغيرة | tour guide | مرشد سياحى | | |



## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular verbs | | أفعـــال منتظمـة | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Present | Past | Present | Past |
| explore يستكشف | explored | discover يكتشف | discovered |
| describe يصف | described | wander يتجول | wandered |
| **Irregular verbs** | | **أفعـــال غير منتظمة** | |
| Present | Past | Present | Past |
| spend يقضى | spent | leave يغادر | left |

## Expressions and Phrases

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| desert tours | جولات فى الصحراء | check in | يسجل دخول |
| free time | وقت فراغ | head out of | يخرج من |
| trading center | مركز تجارى | the best ever | الأفضل على الأطلاق |
| bus ride | ركوب الحافلة | quite quickly | بسرعة كبيرة |



### Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حروف (tion) فى كلمة (traditional) تنطق /ʃ/ (شن).

### Vocabulary Check

1 لاحظ أن (arrive in) تأتى مع الأماكن الكبيرة (الدول / المدن / القرى / القارات) مثل (Egypt - Cairo - Jordan).
وأن (arrive at) تأتى مع الأماكن الداخلية بالمدينة (supermarket - shopping mall - school).

2 لاحظ أن (discover) تأتى مع الأماكن التى يتم اكتشاف وجودها للمرة الأولى، وأن (explore) تأتى مع الأماكن التى نرغب فى معرفتها جيدًا ولكنها فى الأصل معلومة ومعروفة.

**Parents' tips**

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.





## Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



**Desert trip to Jordan** October 4 – 8

**Day 1:** Arrive in Amman and check in to our hotel in the middle of the city. Enjoy some free time in the city before meeting at the Memphis restaurant for a traditional Jordanian dinner in the evening.

**Day 2:** Today we enjoy a tour of Amman. Visit the famous Amman Citadel before exploring the Roman Amphitheater and the Archaeological Museum. After a late lunch in a local restaurant, spend the afternoon and evening walking through Amman's many colorful markets.

**Day 3:** Today we head out of the city for a day trip to As-Salt. About an hour away from Amman, in the ancient town of As-Salt you will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional arts and crafts to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum and discover the history of As-Salt as Jordan's important trading center.

**Day 4:** No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea. There is so much salt in this sea that you are able to float on the water! You can also enjoy the Dead Sea mud, which is very good for your skin.

**Day 5:** After enjoying a relaxed breakfast, we leave at 11 am to drive three hours back to Amman. We will stop on the way for lunch before arriving at the airport at 5 pm.

### Check point

1 Where did they have dinner on the first day?

.......................................................................

2 Why is the Dead Sea special?

.......................................................................

**Parents' tips**

Help your child read the passage and understand the new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويفهم الكلمات الجديدة.

الترجمة:

- اليوم الأول: نصل إلى عمان ونسجل الدخول إلى فندقنا فى وسط المدينة. أستمتع ببعض وقت الفراغ فى المدينة قبل أن نلتقى فى مطعم Memphis لتناول عشاء أردنى تقليدى فى المساء.
- اليوم الثانى: نستمتع اليوم بجولة فى عمان. قم بزيارة قلعة عمان الشهيرة قبل استكشاف المدرج الرومانى والمتحف الأثرى. بعد تناول وجبة غداء فى وقت متأخر فى مطعم محلى، يمكنك قضاء فترة ما بعد الظهر والمساء تتجول فى العديد من الأسواق الملونة فى عمان.
- اليوم الثالث: اليوم نخرج من المدينة فى رحلة نهارية إلى السلط. حوالى ساعة من عمان، فى بلدة السلط القديمة ستجد الكثير من الثقافة الأردنية المحلية. الأسواق رائعة وهناك العديد من الفنون والمصنوعات التقليدية للشراء. سنزور متحف أبو جابر لاكتشاف تاريخ السلط كمركز تجارى مهم.
- اليوم الرابع: لا تكتمل زيارة الأردن بدون رحلة إلى البحر الميت. يوجد الكثير من الملح فى هذا البحر بحيث يمكنك أن تطفو على الماء! يمكنك أيضًا الاستمتاع بطين البحر الميت، وهو مفيد جدًا لبشرتك.
- اليوم الخامس: بعد الاستمتاع بوجبة فطور مريحة، نغادر الساعة ١١ صباحًا لنقود ثلاث ساعات عائدين إلى عمان. سنتوقف فى الطريق لتناول طعام الغداء قبل الوصول إلى المطار الساعة ٥ مساءً.

## Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Thursday, October 6th

Dear Diary,

Today was the best day ever! I love anything to do with history – I always go to the museum at home, so today was a special day for me. The bus ride wasn't too bad. It only took an hour to reach our destination. I listened to music on the way and the time went quite quickly. When we arrived, we had the chance to wander through the streets and several people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts from the stalls. I bought a lovely colorful rug. Saleh (our tour guide) was very kind and took it to the bus for me so that I didn't have to carry it around! That was lucky because I spent hours in the museum!

### Check point

1. Which day was Nahla's best day?

   ..............................................................................

2. What did Nahla buy?

   ..............................................................................

**Tip!** A diary is a book in which you write down things that happen to you each day. A diary entry is a piece of writing in a diary.

المذكرات هى كتاب تدوّن فيه الأشياء التى تحدث لك كل يوم. اليوميات هى جزء من الكتابة فى المذكرة.



**Think!**

I think it is a good idea to join a tour when you are on vacation in a different country, because a tour group can help you explore the history, architecture, or even the food of a new place.

أعتقد أنه من الجيد الانضمام إلى جولة عندما تكون فى إجازة فى بلد مختلف، لأن المجموعة السياحية يمكن أن تساعدك فى استكشاف التاريخ أو الهندسة المعمارية أو حتى طعام مكان جديد.

**Parents' tips**

Help your child read the diary correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ المذكرة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:

• كان اليوم أفضل يوم على الإطلاق! أحب أى شىء له علاقة بالتاريخ – أنا اذهب دائمًا إلى المتحف فى وطنى، لذلك كان اليوم يومًا مميزًا بالنسبة لى. لم تكن رحلة الحافلة سيئة للغاية. استغرق الأمر ساعة واحدة فقط للوصول إلى وجهتنا. لقد استمعت إلى الموسيقى فى الطريق ومضى الوقت بسرعة كبيرة. عندما وصلنا، أتيحت لنا الفرصة لنتجول فى الشوارع واشترى العديد من الناس الأعمال اليدوية التقليدية للأردنيين من الأكشاك. اشتريت سجادة جميلة ملونة. صالح (مرشدنا السياحى) كان لطيفًا جدًا وأخذها إلى الحافلة من أجلى حتى لا أضطر إلى حملها! كان ذلك من حسن حظى لأننى قضيت ساعات فى المتحف!





# Language Focus

## Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

### Prepositions of Time (on / at / in)

1. We use **on** with days of the week and for special days, and specific dates:

   نستخدم (on) فى أيام الأسبوع والأيام المميزة والتواريخ المحددة:

   e.g.

   I go swimming on Mondays. — أذهب للسباحة أيام الاثنين.



   I give my mother a present on Mother's Day. — أعطى والدتى هدية فى عيد الأم.

   My birthday is on June 1st. — عيد ميلادى فى الأول من يونيو.

2. We use **at** with times, and to say at night, and at lunchtime:

   نستخدم (at) مع الأوقات، ولنقول (فى الليل) و (وقت الغداء):

   e.g.



   Our flight lands at 8 pm. — تهبط رحلتنا الساعة 8 مساءً.

   We play basketball at lunchtime. — نلعب كرة السلة فى وقت الغداء.

3. We use **in** with months, seasons, and years, and also with times of day:

   نستخدم (in) مع الشهور والفصول والسنوات وأيضًا مع أوقات اليوم:

   e.g.




   We visit our cousins in June. — نزور أبناء عمى فى يونيو.




   I was born in 2010. — ولدت عام 2010.

   They arrived in the morning. — وصلوا فى الصباح

### Check point

**Read and choose the correct answer:**

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The film starts (in – of – on – at) 7.30.
2. The restaurant opened (at – in – for – on) 2002.
3. Her birthday is (in – on – about – at) May 22nd.

**Parents' tips**

Help your child use "at - on - in" correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم "at - on - in" بطريقة صحيحة.

## Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، أشر وتبادل الأدوار:



**Boy:** Hi Ayman, do you want to play basketball after school on Thursday?

مرحبًا أيمن ، هل تريد أن تلعب كرة السلة بعد المدرسة يوم الخميس؟



**Ayman:** On Thursday? I'm sorry, I can't, I go swimming on Thursdays.

يوم الخميس؟ أنا أسف، لا أستطيع، أنا أذهب للسباحة فى أيام الخميس.

---

**Girl:** Hello Amira, shall we go shopping on the weekend?

مرحبًا أميرة، هل من الممكن أن نذهب للتسوق فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟



**Amira:** Yes please, that sounds good!

نعم من فضلك، يبدو ذلك جيدًا!

---



**Dad:** Fareed, remember you have a dentist's appointment this afternoon.

فريد، تذكر أن لديك موعدًا مع طبيب الأسنان بعد الظهر.



**Fareed:** Oh yes, it's at five o'clock, isn't it?

اووه نعم ، فى الساعة الخامسة، أليس كذلك؟



**Dad:** Yes, that's right.

نعم ، هذا صحيح.



**Fareed:** OK, thanks Dad.

حسنًا، شكرًا أبى.







**Mom:** Talia, our flight leaves at 11 am.

تاليا، طائرتنا ستغادر فى الساعة ١١ صباحًا.



**Talia:** OK Mom, I'll be ready.

حسنًا أمى، سأكون مستعدة.

---

**Sherif:** Mom, remember I'm playing football with Ramy in the morning.

أمى، تذكرى أنى سألعب كرة القدم مع رامى فى الصباح.





**Mom:** Oh, yes, that's fine Sherif. Thanks for reminding me.

نعم ، هذا جيد شريف. شكرًا لتذكيرى.

---

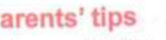
**Sara:** Mom, when are we visiting Grandma and Grandpa?

أمى ، متى سنذهب لزيارة جدتى وجدى؟



**Mom:** We're going in July, Sara. Not long now.

سوف نذهب فى يوليو، سارة. لم يمض وقت طويل الآن.



**Parents' tips**
Help your child listen to the mini-dialogs and role-play them correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى المحادثات القصيرة ويعيد تمثيلها بطريقة صحيحة.






# Lesson 3

12

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

1 On ......................., we arrived in Amman.

2 The ....................... landed at 4 o'clock in the afternoon.

3 We went to our ....................... and checked in.

4 We had ....................... at the Memphis restaurant.

## 2 Read and correct the underlined words: اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط: 4

1 The shop closes in night. (................)

2 In England, it often snows on December. (................)

3 Her birthday is at November 20th. (................)

4 Dad is a baker. He works on the mornings. SB (................)

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4

1 to – We – Saturdays – on – the club – go.

.......................................................................................................

2 at – start – Does – class – 2 pm – your?

.......................................................................................................

3 after – football – On – play – school – I – Wednesdays,.

.......................................................................................................

4 had – We – a – dinner – Jordanian – traditional.

.......................................................................................................

**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child listen and complete. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل.

(2) Help your child read and correct the underlined words. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.

(3) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.





# TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 3



### Listening

15

## 1 Listen and write T ( True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ): 4

1 Today, they went to the parks. ( )

2 Several people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts. ( )

3 I bought a lovely colorful bag. ( )

4 Salah is a tour guide. ( )

### Reading

## 2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

We went to Jordan on vacation. We arrived in Amman and checked in to our hotel in the middle of the city. We had a traditional Jordanian dinner at the Memphis restaurant. The next day, we visited the famous Amman Citadel, explored the Roman Amphitheater, and the Archaeological Museum. On the third day, we headed out for a day trip to As-Salt and visited the Abu Jaber Museum. On the fourth day, we went on a trip to the Dead Sea. There is so much salt in this sea that you are able to float on the water!

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 The word "vacation" means ........................ .

a) holiday b) trip c) tour d) work

2 They went to the Dead Sea on the ........................ day.

a) first b) second c) third d) fourth

**B Answer the following questions:**

3 What is the main idea of the text? .......................................

4 Why is the Dead Sea special? .......................................

### Writing

## 3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "A trip to Jordan" words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من أربعون (40) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المعطاة: 5

(Amman Citadel – Jordanian handicrafts)

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

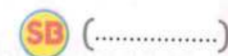
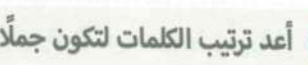
.......................................................................................................

Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |






STUDY




# Lesson 4



## Al-Azhar Park



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

### Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| vacation | إجازة | away | بعيدًا | possible (adj.) | ممكن |
| picnic | نزهة | playground | ملعب | bench | مقعد |
| fantastic (adj.) | جميل | awesome (adj.) | رائع | show | عرض |

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| stay | يبقى | stayed | phone | يتصل | phoned |
| agree | يوافق | agreed | | | |

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| sit | يجلس | sat | come | يأتي | came |

### Expressions and Phrases

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| feel better | يشعر بتحسن | feel sad | يشعر بالحزن |
| (be) over | ينتهي | had to | أضطر إلى |
| feel a bit low | يشعر بالإحباط | a whole group | مجموعة كاملة |

### Vocabulary Check

1 لاحظ أن (feel + adjective) يعبر عن الحالة:

feel + better (adj.) = يشعر بحال أفضل

feel + sad (adj.) = يشعر بالحزن

2 لاحظ أن (such + a/an + adjective) يعبر عن أعلى درجة من الصفة:

It was such a beautiful day.

**Parents' tips**
Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.







Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

## The beginning



1 Seleem was feeling sad. It was a hot summer, school was over and he wanted to go on vacation. His cousin Sherif was away at the beach and Seleem wanted to be there too. His family usually went on vacation with Sherif's family, but this year that wasn't possible – Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay in Cairo.

## The middle

2 Marwan, his friend, phoned him, "Hey, how are you, Seleem?", "I'm feeling a bit low – I want to be at the beach," said Seleem.
"Well, this year you can't go, so let's find something else to do!" said Marwan. "I know, let's go to Al-Azhar Park." "Hmm," said Seleem. "I don't know it, but it sounds interesting!"
Seleem's mom agreed to take them to the park. She made a picnic, so when they arrived, they sat under a big tree on the cool green grass and enjoyed their food. It was such a beautiful day, and Marwan and Seleem played football. Suddenly Ramy and Maged, their friends from school, came running past. "Hi Ramy!" shouted Seleem. "Why are you in the city? I thought you were at the beach!"
"No," said Ramy. "My grandma's ill so Mom wanted to stay in Cairo. There's a whole group of us who stayed at home and didn't travel. Can you come to the playground with us?" Seleem asked his mom and they all went together to the playground. Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park.

## The end

3 "I think this is a fantastic place," said Mom at the end of the afternoon. "I can see there's a show next week. Let's come back with Dad, see the show and have a meal at the restaurant." Seleem felt very happy – now he knew his friends were in town and they had a wonderful park. It seemed that summer in the city would be awesome!

### Check point

1 Why was Seleem feeling a bit low? ..................

2 What did they do at the playground? ..................

**Parents' tips**
Help your child read the passage and understand the new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويفهم الكلمات الجديدة.

الترجمة:

- كان سليم يشعر بالحزن. كان صيفاً حاراً. انتهت المدرسة وأراد الذهاب فى إجازة. كان ابن عمه شريف بعيدًا على الشاطئ وأراد سليم أن يكون هناك أيضًا. كانت عائلته تذهب عادةً فى إجازة مع عائلة شريف، لكن هذا لم يكن ممكنًا هذا العام - حصل والد سليم على وظيفة جديدة وكان عليهم البقاء فى القاهرة.
- اتصل به صديقه مروان قائلاً: «مرحباً، كيف حالك يا سليم؟»، قال سليم: «أشعر بالإحباط قليلاً - أريد أن أكون على الشاطئ». «حسنًا، هذا العام لا يمكنك الذهاب، فلنبحث عن شيء آخر لنفعله!» قال مروان: «أعلم، لنذهب إلى حديقة الأزهر.» قال سليم: «أنا لا أعرف ذلك، لكن يبدو هذا مثيرًا للاهتمام!»
- وافقت والدة سليم على اصطحابهما إلى الحديقة. قامت بنزهة، لذلك عندما وصلوا، جلسوا تحت شجرة كبيرة على العشب الأخضر الرائع واستمتعوا بتناول طعامهم. كان يومًا جميلًا، ولعب مروان وسليم كرة القدم. وفجأة جاء رامى وماجد، صديقاهما من المدرسة، راكضين. «مرحبًا رامى!» صاح سليم: «لماذا أنت فى المدينة؟ اعتقدت أنك كنت فى الشاطئ!»
- قال رامى: «لا». «جدتى مريضة لذا أرادت أمى البقاء فى القاهرة. هناك مجموعة كاملة منا بقيت فى المنزل ولم نسافر. هل يمكنك القدوم إلى الملعب معنا؟ «سأل سليم والدته وذهبا جميعًا معًا إلى الملعب. جلست أمي على مقعد واستمتعت بكل النباتات والطيور الجميلة فى الحديقة.
- قالت أمى فى نهاية فترة ما بعد الظهر: «أعتقد أن هذا مكان رائع». «أرى أنه هناك عرضًا الأسبوع المقبل. دعونا نعود مع أبى، ونشاهد العرض ونتناول وجبة فى المطعم.» شعر سليم بسعادة بالغة - الآن يعرف أن أصدقائه كانوا فى المدينة وهناك حديقة رائعة. بدا أن الصيف فى المدينة سيكون رائعًا!



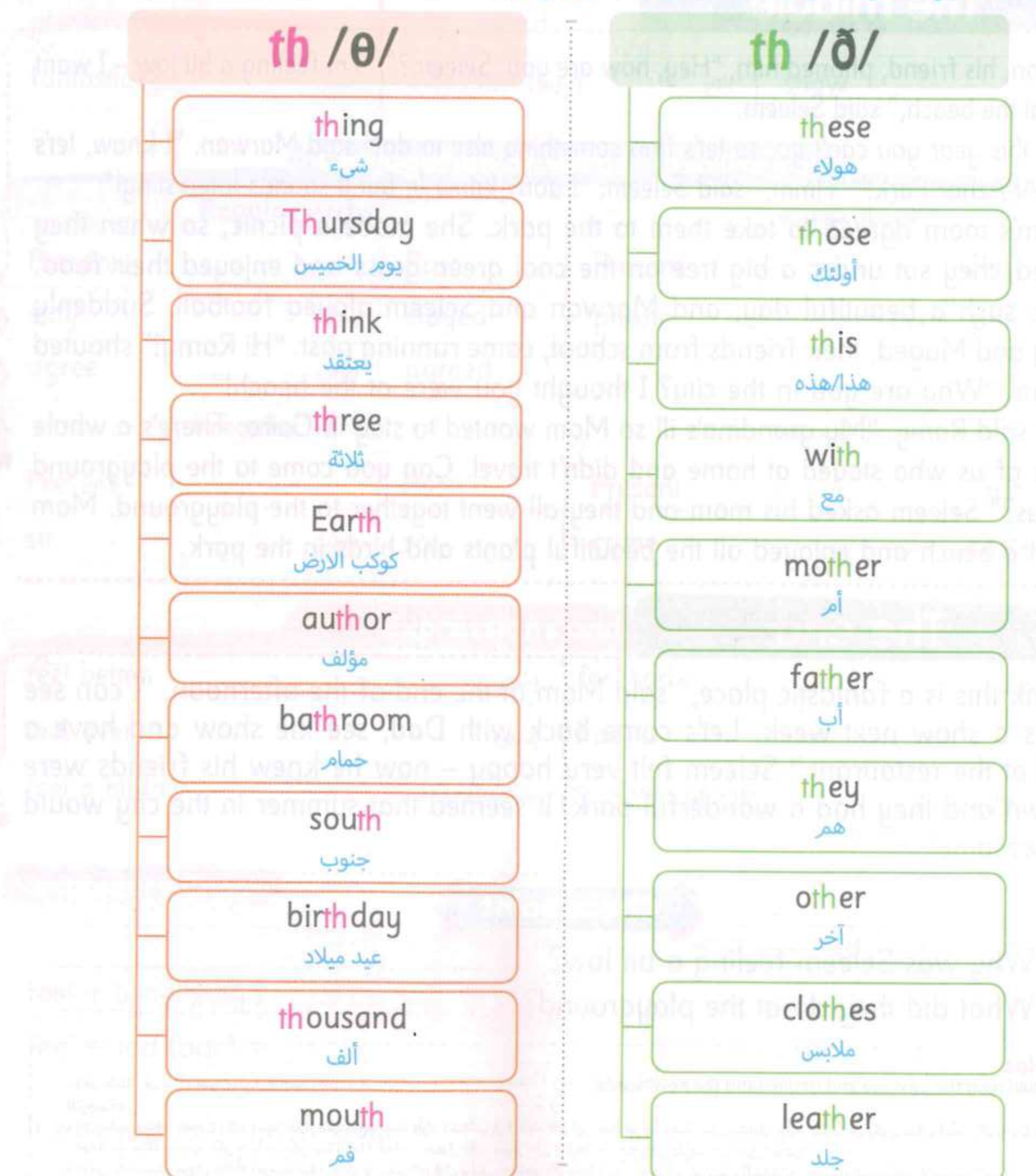
## Pronunciation

**Listen, point, and say:** استمع، أشر وقل:

To make the /ð/ and /θ/ sounds, press your tongue against your top teeth.
لنطق أصوات ال / ð / و / θ /، اضغط على لسانك ضد أسنانك العلوية.

A) The /θ/ sound is unvoiced, which means you should feel some air on your hand when you say it.
الصوت / θ / غير مسموع، مما يعني أنه يجب أن تشعر ببعض الهواء على يدك عندما تقوله.

B) With the /ð/ sound, there's no air, but you can feel a vibration on your neck.
مع صوت / ð /، لا يوجد هواء، لكن يمكنك الشعور بالاهتزاز في رقبتك.




**Parents' tips**
Help your child listen to the words with /θ/ and / ð / sounds using the QR code and let him/her say them correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات التي تحتوي على أصوات الـ /θ/ و /ð/ باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة.







## Language Focus

**Listen, point, and say:** استمع، أشر وقل:

**What is a suffix?**
A suffix is a group of letters that comes at the end of a word to give it a new meaning.
اللاحقة هي مجموعة من الأحرف تأتي في نهاية الكلمة لتعطي معنى جديدًا.

Some adjectives have common suffixes:
بعض الصفات لها لاحقات مشتركة:




### Check point

**Read and choose the correct answer:** اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. His watch is very (expense – expenses – expensive – expensing).
2. The mountain is really (enormous – poisonous – active – expensive).
3. Ali is never lazy. He is always (act – activity – active – acted).

**Parents' tips**
Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.

## Math



### Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

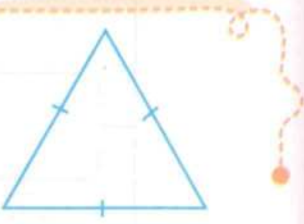
A triangle is a 2D shape with three sides:

المثلث شكل ثنائي الأبعاد بثلاثة أضلاع:

### Types of triangles أنواع المثلثات

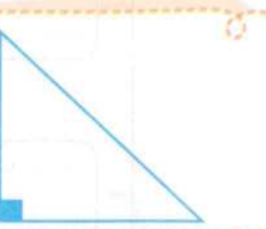
1 An equilateral triangle has three equal sides.

مثلث متساوي الأضلاع له ثلاثة أضلاع متساوية.



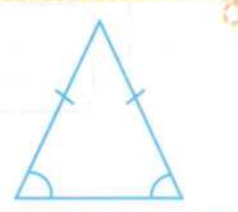
2 A right-angle triangle has one angle that measures 90°.

مثلث قائم الزاوية له زاوية قياسها 90 درجة.



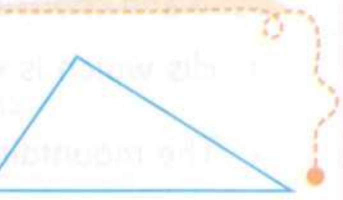
3 An isosceles triangle has two sides of equal length.

مثلث متساوي الساقين له ضلعان متساويان في الطول.



4 A scalene triangle has three sides of different length.

المثلث المتدرج له ثلاثة جوانب بأطوال مختلفة.



**Parents' tips**
Help your child identify the types of triangles correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على أنواع المثلثات بطريقة صحيحة.

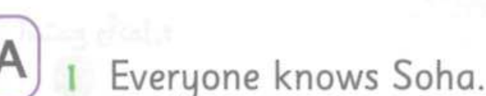




## PRACTICE Lesson 4







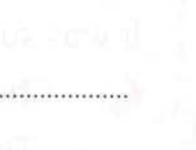
• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

### 1 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): 5

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 Everyone knows Soha. | a. ( ) It is expensive. |
| 2 Omar feels "a bit low". | b. ( ) would be awesome. |
| 3 Ali swims and runs daily. | c. ( ) She is famous. |
| 4 An isosceles triangle .... | d. ( ) He is not happy. |
| | e. ( ) He is very active. |
| 5 Summer in the city ... | f. ( ) has two sides of equal length. |



### 2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4



1 That – Be – poisonous – snake – careful! – is.

..............................................................

2 expensive – very – His – is – watch.

..............................................................

3 has – sides – An equilateral – equal – three – triangle.

..............................................................

4 bit – Seleem – a – feeling – low – was.

..............................................................





### 3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 2







1 seleem's dad had a new job

..............................................................

2 why are you in the city

..............................................................

**Parents' tips**
(1) Help your child read and match.
(2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.
(3) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يقوم بالتوصيل.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.



# TEST YOURSELF on Lesson 4



## Listening — 15



### 1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: — 4

1. They all went together to the ..................
2. Mom sat on a .................. and enjoyed all the beautiful plants.
3. In the evening, they watched the .................. show.
4. It seemed that .................. in the city would be awesome!

## Reading

### 2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: — 6

Seleem was feeling sad. He wanted to go on vacation, but this year that wasn't possible – Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay in Cairo. Marwan, his friend, suggested going to Al-Azhar Park. Seleem was interested. Seleem's mom agreed to take them to the park. She made a picnic, so when they arrived there, they sat under a big tree on the cool green grass and enjoyed their food. It was such a beautiful day.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. The text is about Seleem's visit to ..................
   a) Al-Azhar park b) the beach c) school d) pool
2. The word 'there' refers to .................. .
   a) Cairo b) vacation c) the park d) the tree

**B Answer the following questions:**

3. Why couldn't Seleem go on a vacation this year? ..................
4. Summarize the text in two sentences. ..................





## Writing

### 3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Al-Azhar Park" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المعطاة: — 5

made a picnic – played football

..................

..................



Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |





# STUDY — Lessons 5&6 — Writing / Project





## Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Reem — July 21st

Dear Diary,

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights(1) from the boat, like the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings, and the Eiffel Tower(2). The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal. I tried(3) to speak French but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood(4) me! At the end of the day we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.

(1) معالم سياحية مشهورة
(2) برج إيفل
(3) حاولت
(4) فهم

Amira — April 5th

Dear Diary,

I love this city! There's so much to do. Today we went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum that is 800 years old! We went early(1) in the morning but it was still very busy(2) with people. We also visited Jardin Majorelle, a lovely garden where we had a picnic. I like it there because it reminds me a bit of Al-Azhar Park at home. But my favorite place is Jemaa el-Fnaa, the market place. The smells(3) coming from the market stalls make me hungry! I had a sandwich yesterday. I can't wait to go back(4) there tomorrow!

(1) مبكرًا
(2) مزدحم
(3) الروائح
(4) أعود

## How to write a diary

1. Write the date when you start a new diary entry. اكتب التاريخ الذى تبدأ فيه إدخال يوميات جديدة.
2. You should start with "Dear Diary". يجب أن تبدأ بـ «مذكراتى العزيزة».
3. You should write about how you felt. يجب أن تكتب عن كيف كان شعورك.
4. You should include personal pronouns like "I" and "me". يجب عليك تضمين الضمائر الشخصية مثل «I» و «me».

**Parents' tips**

Help your child recognize the form of a diary.

ساعد طفلك فى التعرف على شكل المذكرات.

الترجمة:

٢١ يوليو

مذكراتى العزيزة،

لقد حظيت بيوم رائع اليوم. ذهبت إلى النهر. لقد رأينا بعض المعالم السياحية الشهيرة من القارب، مثل متحف اللوفر، وهو متحف جميل بلوحات رائعة، وبرج إيفل. برج إيفل مرتفع حقًا ومصنوع من المعدن. حاولت التحدث بالفرنسية لكنى لم أستطع قول أى شىء. لكن الفرنسيين كانوا طيبين للغاية وعندما تحدثت الإنجليزية فهمونى! فى نهاية اليوم ذهبنا إلى مطعم فرنسى وتناولنا وجبة رائعة مع البطاطس. لقد كان يومًا مميزًا.

الخامس من أبريل

مذكراتى العزيزة.

أنا أحب هذه المدينة! هنالك الكثير لفعله. ذهبنا اليوم إلى مدرسة على بن يوسف، متحف جميل عمره ٨٠٠ عام! ذهبنا فى الصباح الباكر لكنه كان لا يزال مشغولاً للغاية بالناس. زرنا أيضًا حديقة ماجوريل، وهى حديقة جميلة حيث كان لدينا نزهة. أحبها هناك لأنها تذكرنى قليلاً بحديقة الأزهر فى الوطن. لكن مكانى المفضل هو جامع الفناء، السوق. الروائح القادمة من أكشاك السوق تجعلنى أشعر بالجوع! تناولت شطيرة أمس. لا أطيق الانتظار للعودة إلى هناك غدًا!



## Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

### My perfect vacation
### إجازتى المثالية

**Day 1**
In the morning, we go to the beach to go snorkeling (1). Swim with the turtles and brightly-colored (2) fish! The afternoon can be spent on the beach with a picnic and a good book.





**Day 2**
Today, we race(3) through the sand dunes(4) in beach buggies!(5) It's fun and fast! Can you keep up(6)?

| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | يذهب للغطس |
| (2) | زاهى الألوان |
| (3) | تسابقنا |
| (4) | الكثبان الرملية |
| (5) | عربة الشاطئ |
| (6) | تلحق بى |
| (7) | من المحتمل |
| (8) | الماضى الثقافى |
| (9) | الشيف (الطاهى) |
| (10) | أطباق (وجبات محلية) |

**Day 3**
Spend a relaxed day shopping and wandering through the markets. Perhaps(7) buy some traditional handicrafts to take home.






**Day 4**
Learn about the city's cultural past(8) with a trip to the museum today. In the evening, we go to a traditional restaurant where you can see the chef(9) making the local dishes(10).

**Parents' tips**
Help your child recognize the form of a poster about a vacation.

ساعد طفلك فى التعرف على شكل ملصق عن الإجازة.
الترجمة:
• اليوم الأول
فى الصباح نذهب إلى الشاطئ للغطس. أسبح مع السلاحف والأسماك ذات الألوان الزاهية! يمكن قضاء فترة ما بعد الظهر على الشاطئ مع نزهة وكتاب جيد.
• اليوم الثانى
اليوم نتسابق عبر الكثبان الرملية فى عربات الشاطئ! إنه ممتع وسريع! هل يمكنك أن تلحق بى؟
• اليوم الثالث
اقض يومًا مريحًا فى التسوق والتجول فى الأسواق. ربما تشترى بعض الأعمال اليدوية التقليدية لأخذها إلى المنزل.
• اليوم الرابع
تعرف على ماضى المدينة الثقافى برحلة إلى المتحف اليوم. فى المساء، نذهب إلى مطعم تقليدى حيث يمكنك رؤية الشيف وهو يعد الأطباق المحلية.





# PRACTICE Lessons 5&6



•Remembering •Understanding •Applying •Analyzing •Evaluating •Creating

## 1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: (4)

1 I'm on a .................. in Morocco.
2 Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa is a beautiful .................. that is 800 years old!
3 We visited Jardin Majorelle, a lovely .................. where we had a picnic.
4 The .................. coming from the market stalls make me hungry!

## 2 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: (2)

1 The eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal
..................................................................
2 i tried to speak french, but I couldn't.
..................................................................

## 3 Write a diary entry of FORTY (40) words about "A day when you did something special" using the following guiding elements: (5)



اكتب مذكرة مكونة من أربعين (40) كلمة عن يوم فعلت به شيئًا مميزًا باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

**Fact file:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Place | Dahab, Egypt |
| Tourist Attractions | the beach, bazaars |
| Activities | snorkeling, safari trip |

Dear Diary,
..................................................................
..................................................................
..................................................................
..................................................................
..................................................................

**Parents' tips**
(1) Help your child listen and complete.
(2) Help your child punctuate the given sentence or questions.
(3) Help your child write about the given topic.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن الموضوع المعطى.



# TEST YOURSELF | on Lessons 5&6




13



## Listening

**1 Listen and write T ( True) or F (False):** استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ): 4

1. They are on a vacation in London. ( )
2. The Eiffel Tower is made of metal. ( )
3. He can speak French. ( )
4. They had a wonderful meal with potatoes. ( )



## Reading

**2 Read and match (A) with (B):** اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): 



5

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 We go to the beach ... | a. ( ) in beach buggies. |
| 2 We race through the sand dunes ... | b. ( ) to go snorkeling. |
| 3 Swim with the turtles ... | c. ( ) with a trip to the museum. |
| 4 Learn about the city's cultural past ... | d. ( ) and colored fish. |
| 5 The Eiffel Tower is really tall ... | e. ( ) but I couldn't. |
| | f. ( ) and made of metals. |



## Writing

**3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:** أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة: 



4

1. such – I – day – a cool – had – today.
   ..........................................................................
2. tried – French – speak – I – to.
   ..........................................................................
3. French – went – a – We – restaurant – to.
   ..........................................................................
4. wait – go – can't – tomorrow – I – back – to.
   ..........................................................................



Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practice more | Solve more exams | Well done! |



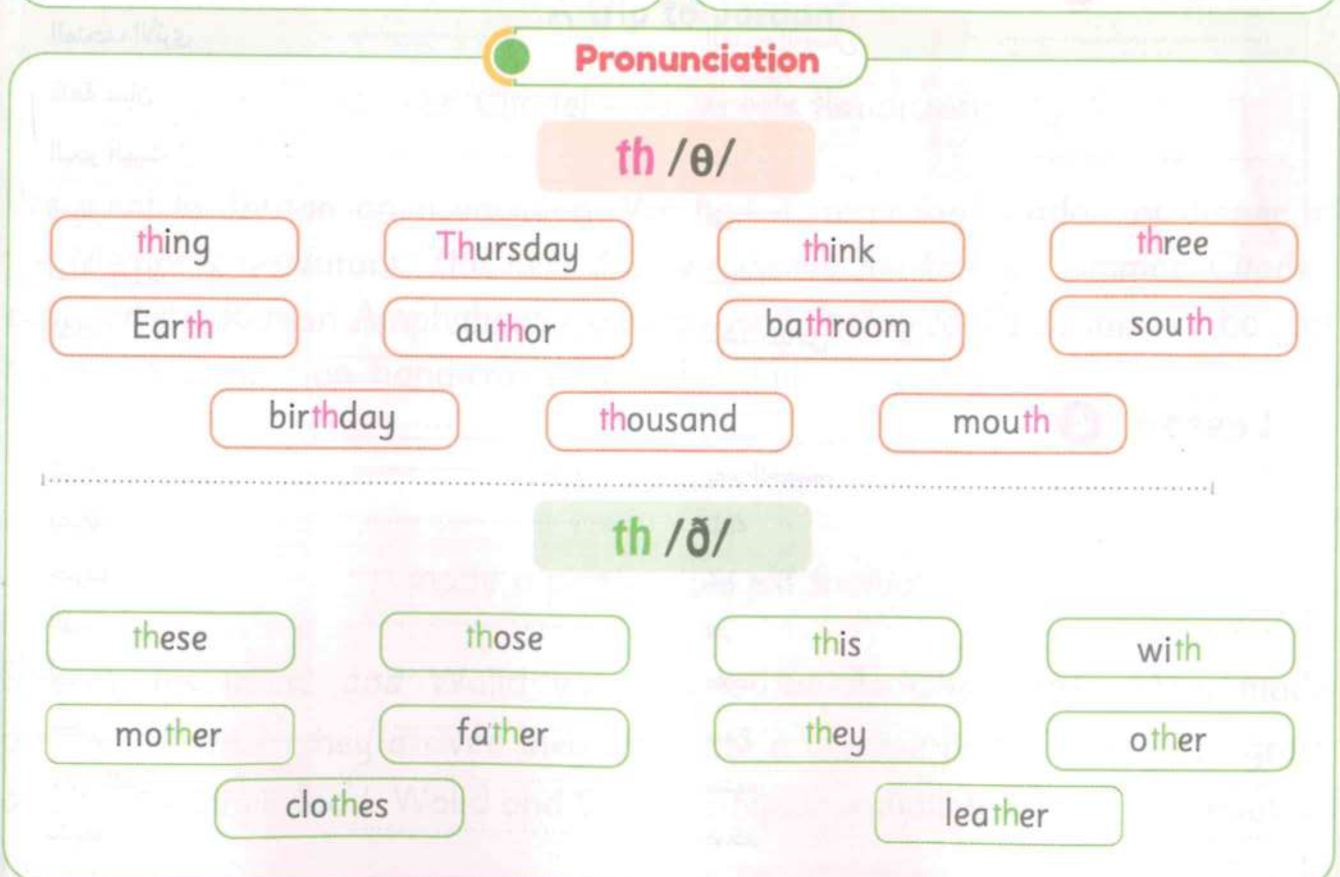
# UNIT 12 REVIEW











UNIT 12

## Check Your Vocabulary



### Lesson 1

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| تذكرة | .................... | حقيبة سفر | .................... |
| فندق | .................... | سائح | .................... |
| جواز سفر | .................... | حمام سباحة | .................... |
| رحلة | .................... | زوج | .................... |
| إجازة | .................... | سطح | .................... |
| رحلة جوية | .................... | مدينة الملاهي | .................... |

### Lesson 2

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| دراجة | .................... | ضوء الشمس | .................... |
| أطباق بلاستيكية | .................... | ذهب | .................... |
| الرمال | .................... | حذاء مصنوع من الجلد | .................... |
| جلابية | .................... | محاصيل | .................... |
| حبوب | .................... | قصب | .................... |
| سلال | .................... | سترة | .................... |

### Lesson 3

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| المتحف الأثرى | .................... | المدرج الروماني | .................... |
| قلعة عمان | .................... | متحف أبو جابر | .................... |
| البحر الميت | .................... | تقليدى | .................... |
| قديم | .................... | فن | .................... |
| أعمال يدوية | .................... | سجادة | .................... |
| كشك | .................... | مرشد سياحى | .................... |

### Lesson 4

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| شيء | .................... | يوم الخميس | .................... |
| يعتقد | .................... | ثلاثة | .................... |
| جنوب | .................... | عيد ميلاد | .................... |
| ألف | .................... | فم | .................... |
| أب | .................... | ملابس | .................... |
| خطير | .................... | مبدع | .................... |
| غالي الثمن | .................... | مشهور | .................... |
| نشيط | .................... | ضخم | .................... |
| سام | .................... | أم | .................... |



## WRITING TIME

### "A vacation in Singapore"

high-rise buildings – boat trips

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. Yesterday, we went on a boat trip with some other tourists to an island. There is a theme park, too.

### "Resources"

* What are natural resources?
* Give more or two examples of man-made resources.

There are two different resources on Earth. Natural resources are materials or things we can find in nature. Trees and stone are examples of natural resources. Man-made resources are materials or things that humans have made. Plastic bottles and cotton clothes are examples of man-made resources.

### "A trip to Jordan"

Amman Citadel – Jordanian handicrafts

We went to Jordan on a vacation. We had a traditional Jordanian dinner at the Memphis restaurant. The next day, we visited the famous Amman Citadel, explored the Roman Amphitheater and the Archaeological Museum. We bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts from the stalls.

### "Al-Azhar Park"

made a picnic – played football

Seleem, his mom, and Walid went all to the Al-Azhar Park. Mom made a picnic, so when they arrived they sat under a big tree on the cool green grass and enjoyed their food. Walid and Seleem played football. It was such a beautiful hot day.



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

## 1 Read and choose the correct word: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1. The stars shine (at – in – from – on) night.
2. I brush my teeth (on – in – next – at) the morning.
3. The match is at (4 o'clock – Tuesday – morning – the evening).
4. He bought a very (expense – expenses – expensive – expensed) car last month.

## 2 Read and correct the underlined words: اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التى تحتها خط: 4

1. Nour is very act. She is never lazy. (....................)
2. Grandma was born on 1962. (....................)
3. We went back to our hotel at Wednesday. (....................)
4. The shop opened on 2002. (....................)

## 3 Read and rewrite the following: اقرأ وأعد كتابة الآتى: 4

1. Her birthday is in May. (May 22nd)

..............................................................................................

2. He always works hard. (active)

..............................................................................................

3. That house costs a lot of money. (expensive)

..............................................................................................

4. I wake up at 6 am. (morning)

..............................................................................................

**Parents' tips**

(1) Help your child read and choose. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار.
(2) Help your child correct the underlined words. ساعد طفلك أن يصحح الكلمات التى تحتها خط.
(3) Help your child rewrite the sentences or questions correctly. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد كتابة الجمل أو الأسئلة بطريقة صحيحة.











### Listening

## 1 Listen and write T ( True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ): 4

1. Natural resources are materials or things we can find in nature. ( )
2. Trees and stone are man-made resources. ( )
3. Man-made resources are materials or things that humans have made. ( )
4. Plastic bottles and cotton clothes are man-made resources. ( )



## 2 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

1. Last week, Sami enjoyed a tour of .................... .
2. I visited the famous Amman .................... .
3. He had lunch in a local .................... .
4. He spent the afternoon and evening .................... through Amman's many colorful markets.



### Reading

## 3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب): 5

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1. The Gardens by the Bay ... | a. ( ) are natural resources. |
| 2. Man-made resources ... | b. ( ) so I can take photos. |
| 3. Trees and stone ... | c. ( ) are things that humans have made. |
| 4. Because Farouk lives in Aswan ... | d. ( ) It feels hard and dry. |
| 5. I always take my phone ... | e. ( ) he knows that the sun will shine most days. |
| | f. ( ) is a really special place. |

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

Lama is going on vacation. She is traveling to France by plane. Today, she is packing her suitcase. She knows that there is often rain in France, so she is taking her umbrella. It can also be cold there, so she is packing a sweater. Lama loves swimming and asked her friend in France if there was a place she could swim. Her friend said she didn't live near the sea, but she could swim in a river or a lake if she wanted to.

**A** **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 Lama is traveling to France by ........................... .

a) car b) train c) plane d) ship

2 The word 'pack' means to ........................... things for a holiday.

a) clean b) wash c) dry d) prepare

**B** **Answer the following questions:**

3 What's the main idea of the text?

...........................................................................

4 Where could Lama swim?

...........................................................................

## Writing

**5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:** أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4

1 low – a – am – feeling – I – bit.

...........................................................................

2 farmer – is – Aswan – Farouk – a – from.

...........................................................................

3 spend – Where – will – you – next – your – vacation?

...........................................................................

4 people – kind – very – were – French.

...........................................................................

**6 Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم الآتي: 2

1 it's hot here in Singapore ...........................................

2 Can we go to al-Azhar Park ...........................................

**7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "My perfect vacation" using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 5

Where did you go? – What did you do?

...........................................................................

...........................................................................

...........................................................................





# Review 4

## Places to spend the holiday



### Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

#### A village

Hi Magdy,
I'm having a lovely[1] time here. It's peaceful[2] and very quiet, especially[3] at night. There are a few shops and houses. There is only one restaurant, but it's great! Everyone who lives here is really friendly.
Bye!
Ali

أهلًا مجدى
أنا اقضى وقتًا جميلًا هنا. الجو هادئ هنا وخاصة ليلًا. يوجد القليل من المحلات والمنازل وهناك مطعم واحد فقط، ولكن الأمر رائع! كل من يعيش هنا ودود حقًا.
مع السلامة، على

| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | جميل |
| (2) | هادئ |
| (3) | خاصة |

#### A nature trail

Dear Amr,
Thank you for telling me to pack[1] some good hiking shoes and a sun hat! We have walked for many hours every day. There are amazing things to see – some unusual flowers and trees. One day, I was lucky enough to see a fennec fox[2] and a wild[3] cat!
Hope you're all well,
Salah

عزيزى عمرو
أشكرك لأنك أخبرتنى أن أحزم أحذية تريض جيدة وقبعة شمس! نحن نمشى لساعات طويلة كل يوم. يوجد العديد من الاشياء المدهشة لرؤيتها هنا - بعض الأشجار والأزهار النادرة. فى يوم ما، كنت محظوظًا بما يكفى لرؤية ثعلب الفنك وقطة برية.
أتمنى أن تكون بخير، صلاح

| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | يحزم |
| (2) | ثعلب الفنك |
| (3) | برى |

#### A busy city

Hi Ghada,
We arrived on Monday, and we haven't stopped! There is so much to see here. We visited some museums and the theater[1], and we had an amazing tour of famous places. It's really fun, but very busy and crowded[2].
See you soon,[3]
Randa

أهلًا غادة
وصلنا يوم الاثنين، ولم نتوقف! يوجد الكثير لرؤيته هنا. قمنا بزيارة بعض المتاحف والمسرح وقمنا بجولة رائعة لبعض الأماكن المشهورة. المكان حقًا ممتع، ولكنه مشغول جدًا ومزدحم.
أراك قريبًا، راندا

| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | مسرح |
| (2) | مزدحم |
| (3) | أراك قريبًا |

#### A desert

Hello Rabab,
How are you? I'm having a real adventure[1] here. We arrived on the weekend and set up[2] our tent.[3] It's quiet difficult to sleep in a tent on sand! At night, we sit around[4] a fire. (It gets really cold here at night). We sing songs[5] and eat delicious food, which we cook on the fire. You can see a million stars! It's beautiful.
See you next week,
Sahar

أهلًا رباب
كيف حالك؟ أنا حقًا أقوم بمغامرة حقيقية هنا. نحن وصلنا فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع وأقمنا خيمة. من الصعب إلى حد ما النوم فى خيمة على الرمال. نقوم بإشعال نار فى الليل ونجلس حولها. يصبح الجو باردًا حقًا هنا ليلًا. نغنى الأغانى ونأكل طعامًا لذيذًا، ذلك الطعام الذى قمنا بطهيه على النار. يمكنك رؤية ملايين النجوم! إنها جميلة.
أراك الأسبوع القادم، سحر

| | |
|---|---|
| (1) | مغامرة |
| (2) | ينصب / يقيم |
| (3) | خيمة |
| (4) | يجلس حول |
| (5) | أغانٍ |

**Parents' tips**
Help your child read about how people spend their vacations and where.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن كيف وأين يقضى الناس إجازاتهم.

Fiction Reader

# Story

Connect Reading Adventures

## Story overview

**• By the end of the story, the student will be able to:** بنهاية القصة سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- Identify the characters and the main events in a story. - يتعرف على الشخصيات والأحداث الرئيسية فى القصة.
- Guess what is going to happen next in a story. - يخمن ما الذى سوف يحدث بعد ذلك فى القصة.
- Give an opinion about a story. - يعطى رأيًا عن القصة.

# A Fantastic Family Adventure



Title
العنوان

## مغامرة عائلية رائعة



Retold by Nicola Gardner — Author المؤلف

Illustrated by Nathalie Ortega — Illustrator الرسام

## Warm up

Ramy and Malak are brother and sister. A group of archaeologists found a skeleton of a dinosaur near their grandparents' village. The kids' uncle is one of these archaeologists, so they want to see the skeleton. They travel to the village with their family. They want to go through a nature trail to reach that place. They prepare their food and tools, then they go on the trip. They see many animals, plants, birds and rocks in the desert. They find bones of an old ibex in the desert. At the end, they manage to reach the place and see the skeleton of the dinosaur. They had a fantastic adventure. The kids learned to look around them and notice things carefully.

رامى وملك أخوان. وجد مجموعة من علماء الآثار هيكلًا عظميًا لديناصور بالقرب من قرية أجداد الأطفال. عم الأولاد واحد من هؤلاء العلماء، لذلك يريد الأولاد أن يروا الهيكل. يسافر الأولاد إلى القرية مع عائلتهم. يريد أفراد العائلة أن يمروا من خلال ممر طبيعى (ممر مخصص للمشى) وصولًا إلى مكان الهيكل. يقوم أفراد العائلة بتجهيز الطعام والأدوات اللازمة لينطلقوا فى الرحلة. تتمكن العائلة من رؤية العديد من الحيوانات، النباتات، الطيور والصخور فى الصحراء. يجدون عظامًا لحيوان الوعل (ماعز تعيش فى جبال الألب) الأثرى فى الصحراء. تتمكن العائلة من الوصول إلى المكان فى النهاية وتتمكن من رؤية هيكل الديناصور. كانت مغامرة رائعة للعائلة. تعلم الأولاد النظر من حولهم وملاحظة الأشياء بحرص.



Story

# A Fantastic Family Adventure





## Main Vocabulary





**Listen, point, and say:** استمع، أشر وقل:



dinosaur ديناصور

Dinosaurs were very big animals which lived millions of years ago.

كانت الديناصورات حيوانات ضخمة عاشت لملايين السنوات فى الماضى.



bones عظام

Our body has many bones to help us stand up.

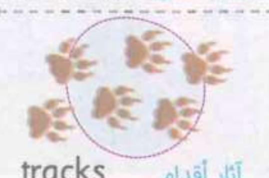
توجد بأجسامنا العديد من العظام لتساعدنا على الوقوف.



skeleton هيكل عظمى

Fish and other animals have a skeleton made of bones inside their bodies.

لدى الأسماك وحيوانات أخرى هيكل عظمى من عظام موجودة بداخل أجسامهم.



tracks آثار أقدام

Animals' feet leave tracks on the ground where they walked.

أقدام الحيوانات تترك آثارًا على الأرض حيث تمشى.



binoculars منظار (مجهر ذو عينين)

She likes looking at things in the distance with her binoculars.

تحب (هى) النظر إلى الأشياء التى على بعد باستخدام المنظار الخاص بها.



ibex

حيوان الوعل (ماعز جبلى تعيش فى جبال الألب)

An ibex is a type of desert animal like a gazelle.

حيوان الوعل هو حيوان يعيش فى الصحراء يشبه الغزال.

archaeologist عالم آثار

An archaeologist is someone who digs underground to find objects from many years ago and studies them.

عالم الآثار هو شخص يحفر تحت الأرض ليجد أشياء تعود إلى الماضى ويقوم بدراستها.

archaeological dig حفر أثرى

An archaeological dig is when people work together to find something under the ground.

الحفر الأثرى هو عمل مجموعة أشخاص سويًا لإيجاد شىء أثرى تحت الأرض.









yard حديقة منزل




newspaper جريدة



village قرية



desert صحراء

natural trail
ممر طبيعى (ممر مخصص للمشى)

feteer فطير





mint tea شاى بالنعناع



hats قبعات



scarves أوشحة



sunglasses نظارات شمسية



snacks وجبات خفيفة



backpacks حقائب ظهر



cactus plants
نباتات الصبار



palm trees أشجار النخيل



sheep أغنام



camels جمال

fennec fox
الفَنَكُ (ثعلب الصحراء)



dorcas gazelle
غزال دوركاس (غزال تعيش فى الصحراء)



sand cat
قط الرمال (قط يعيش فى الصحراء)



rocks صخور



map خريطة



rain مطر



wind رياح



planet كوكب

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| suddenly (adv.) | فجأة | inside | داخل |
| scary (adj.) | مرعب/ مخيف | a group of | مجموعة من |
| adventure | مغامرة | prepared (v.) | جهز |
| area | منطقة | part | جزء |
| warm (adj.) | دافئ | perfect (adj.) | مثالى |
| pleased (adj.) | مسرور | quietly (adv.) | بهدوء |
| carefully (adv) | بحرص | continue (v.) | يستمر |
| along (adv) | بطول | look down (v.) | ينظر للأسفل |
| path | ممر | strange (adj.) | غريب |
| photographs | صور | go back (v.) | يعود |
| certainly (adv) | بالتأكيد | probably (adv) | من المحتمل |
| type | نوع | ancient (adj.) | قديم/ أثرى |
| exist (v.) | يتواجد | disappointed (adj.) | محبط |
| dry (adj.) | جاف | blow away (v.) | يعصف بعيدًا |
| notice (v.) | يلاحظ | hard (adj.) | صعب |
| look for (v.) | يبحث عن | surface | سطح |
| environment | بيئة | discover (v.) | يكتشف |
| look around (v.) | ينظر حول | | |

## Expressions and Phrases

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| That's awesome. | إنه رائع | That's right/You're right. | هذا صحيح |
| Later that evening | لاحقًا هذا المساء | That's a great idea. | يا لها من فكرة رائعة. |
| It's good/lovely to see you. | من الجيد رؤيتك | It's lovely to be here. | من الرائع التواجد هنا. |
| rare animals | حيوانات نادرة | Well done! | أحسنت |
| under the ground | تحت الأرض | in fact | فى الحقيقة.... |
| climate change | تغير مناخى | that's good/bad for | إنه جيد/ سيئ من أجل |
| getting ready | يستعد | It's such a cool job! | يا لها من وظيفة رائعة |
| fascinating work | عمل مذهل | Thank you dear | شكرًا يا عزيزى/ عزيزتى |
| See you soon. | أراك قريبًا | | |

**Parents' tips**
Help your child listen to the vocabulary using the QR code, then let him/her say what he/she listens to correctly.
ساعد طفلك فى الاستماع إلى الكلمات باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code ثم دعه يقول ما يسمع بطريقة صحيحة.





# B Story Elements



**Read and notice:** اقرأ ولاحظ:

## Characters الشخصيات



Ramy
رامى



Malak
ملك



Dad
الأب



Mom
الأم



Grandma
الجدة



Grandpa
الجد



Uncle Youssef
العم يوسف




## Setting
المكان






| The family's house<br>منزل العائلة | Grandparents' house<br>منزل الأجداد | The nature trail<br>الممر الطبيعي<br>(ممر مخصص للمشي) | The area of the dinosaur skeleton<br>المنطقة المحيطة بهيكل الديناصور |
|---|---|---|---|




## Plot
الحبكة





**The Beginning**

Dad tells Ramy and Malak that a group of archaeologists found a dinosaur skeleton near their grandparents' village. The children want to go there to see the skeleton.

يخبر الوالد رامي وملك أن مجموعة من علماء الآثار وجدوا هيكل ديناصور بالقرب من قرية أجدادهم. يريد الولدان الذهاب إلى هناك لرؤية الهيكل.

**The Middle**

The family starts their adventure. The family goes along a nature trail to reach the skeleton area. They see many animals, plants and birds. They also find bones of an ancient ibex in the desert.

تبدأ العائلة مغامرتها. تذهب بطول الممر وصولًا إلى مكان الهيكل. يرون العديد من الحيوانات، النباتات والطيور. يرون عظام حيوان الوعل (ماعز تعيش في جبال الألب) الأثرى في الصحراء.

**The End**

Finally, the family reaches the area of the skeleton with Uncle Youssef. Uncle Youssef tells them about how archaeologists find ancient things.

تصل العائلة في النهاية إلى المنطقة المحيطة بالهيكل مع العم يوسف. يخبر العم يوسف العائلة عن عمل علماء الآثار ودورهم في إيجاد الأشياء الأثرية.

**Parents' tips**

Discuss the story elements like characters, setting, and plot "the beginning, the middle, and the end" with your child.

ناقش عناصر القصة مثل الشخصيات، المكان، الزمان، والحبكة (البداية والمنتصف والنهاية) مع طفلك.

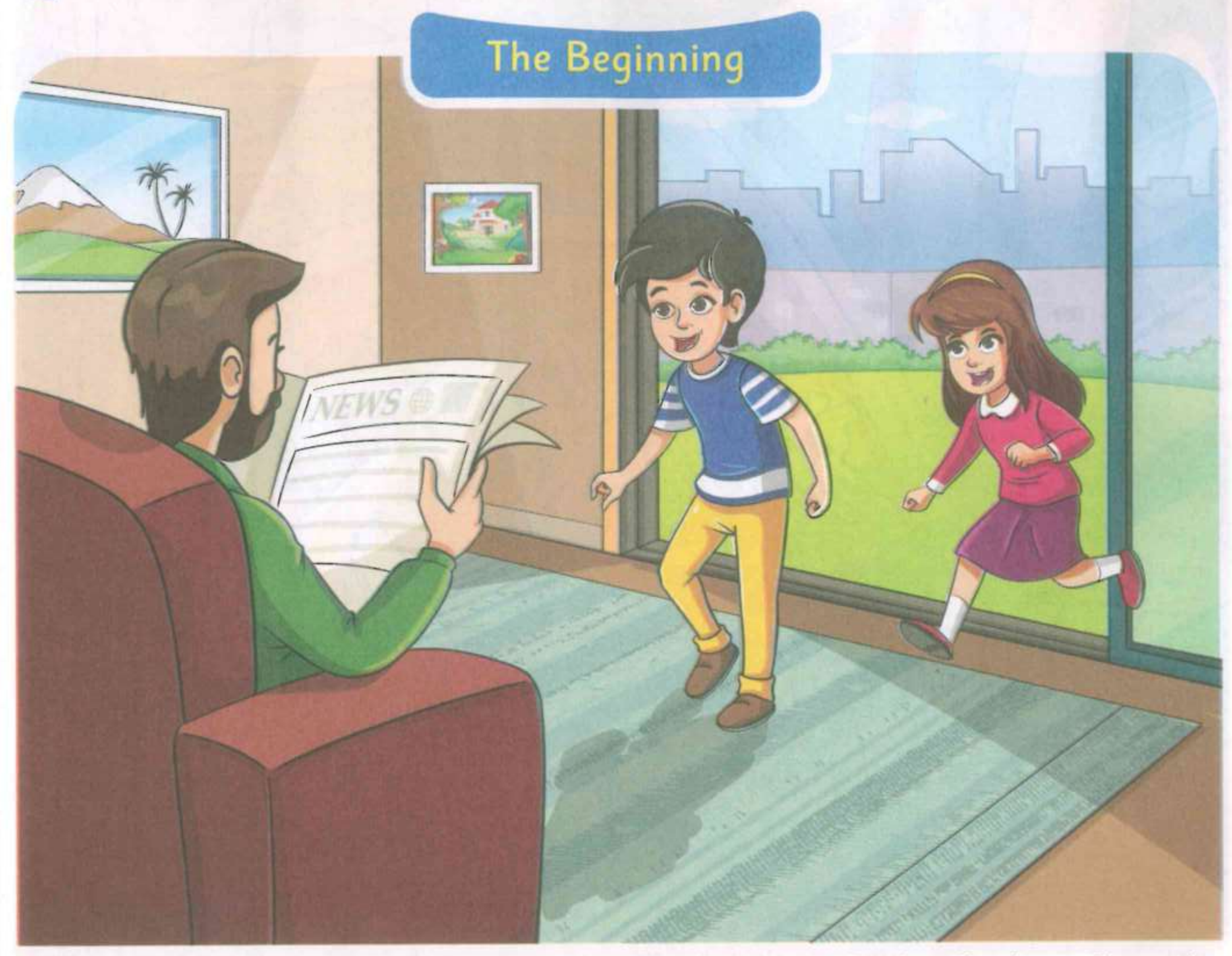




# Story

**Listen, read, and role-play:** استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

## The Beginning




Ramy and Malak are playing in the yard. Suddenly Dad calls them from the house. "Hey kids, come and see this story in the newspaper!"
The children run inside to see. Dad says, "Look. They found something amazing near Grandma and Grandpa's village."
"What is it, Dad?" asks Ramy. "It looks scary!"
Dad says, "No Ramy, it's not scary at all. It's the skeleton of a dinosaur. A group of archaeologists found it. And your uncle Youssef is one of those archaeologists!"

يلعب رامي ومَلَك في حديقة المنزل. ينادي الأب عليهما من الداخل فجأة. «يا أولاد، تعالوا إلى هنا وانظروا إلى تلك القصة في الجريدة.» يجري الأولاد إلى الداخل. يقول الأب «لقد وجدوا شيئًا مذهلًا بالقرب من قرية أجدادكم.»

يسأل رامي «ما هو ذلك الشيء يا أبي؟» «يبدو مخيفًا!»

يقول الأب: «لا يا رامي، إنه ليس مخيفًا على الإطلاق. إنه هيكل عظمي لديناصور. قام بإيجاده مجموعة من علماء الآثار. عمكم يوسف واحد من هؤلاء العلماء».

**Vocabulary**

| skeleton | هيكل عظمي | dinosaur | ديناصور | archaeologist | عالم آثار |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|



"That's awesome, Dad!" says Malak. "The dinosaur skeleton is really old, isn't it?"
"Yes, that's right, Malak." says Dad. "It's about 98 million years old!"
"Wow! Uncle Youssef has got a really interesting job, hasn't he?" says Ramy.
"Yes, he has. And his work is important too. It helps us learn about the past."
says Dad.

تقول ملك «هذا شيء رائع يا أبى.» «الهيكل العظمى الخاص بالديناصور قديم للغاية. أليس كذلك؟» يقول الأب: «نعم، هذا صحيح يا ملك.» «عمره يرجع إلى قرابة 98 مليون عام!» يقول رامى «واو، لدى العم يوسف وظيفة ممتعة. أليس كذلك؟» يقول الأب: «نعم، إنه كذلك وعمله مهم أيضًا. يساعدنا عمله فى التعرف على الماضى.»

**Vocabulary**

| interesting (adj.) ممتعة | important (adj.) مهم | the past الماضى |
|---|---|---|





Later that evening Ramy and his family are having dinner.
Dad says, "Do you want to go there the next time we go to Grandma's house?"
Ramy says, "That's a great idea, Dad. It would be an adventure to go into the desert!"
Mom says, "There's a beautiful nature trail there." Why don't we walk that together?" "Oh yes please, Mom!" I love nature. "says Malak.

يتناول رامى وعائلته وجبة العشاء لاحقًا هذا المساء. يقول الأب: «هل ترغبون بالذهاب إلى هناك عندما نذهب إلى منزل جدتكم؟» يقول رامى: «إنها فكرة رائعة يا أبى. ستكون بمثابة مغامرة فى الصحراء». تقول الأم: «يوجد ممر طبيعى هناك (ممر مخصص للمشى). لماذا لا نسير هناك سويًا؟» تقول ملك: «أووه نعم، من فضلك يا أمى.» أنا أحب الطبيعة.

**Vocabulary**

| Later that evening لاحقًا هذا المساء | adventure مغامرة | nature trail ممر طبيعى (ممر مخصص للمشى) |
|---|---|---|



"Ramy! Malak!" Grandma calls. She is so excited to see her grandchildren. "I have prepared your favourite things: feteer and mint tea! Come inside and eat."
"Hello," says Grandpa to Mom and Dad. "It's so good to see you."
"It's lovely to be here," says Dad. "Tomorrow we want to take the children on a nature trail."
"Excellent," says Grandpa. "There's lots to see in our area. It's a beautiful place."

تنادى الجدة: «رامى! ملك!.» هى متحمسة للغاية لرؤية أحفادها. «قمت بتجهيز طعامكما المفضل: فطير وشاى بالنعناع. تعالوا إلى الداخل وتناولا الطعام» يقول الجد: «مرحبًا» إلى الأم والأب «من الجيد رؤيتكم» يقول الأب: «من الجيد التواجد هنا.» «سنأخذ الأولاد غدًا إلى الممر الطبيعى». يقول الجد: «ممتاز. إنه مكان رائع. يوجد الكثير من الأشياء لترونها فى منطقتنا.»

**Vocabulary**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| prepared (v.) جهز | feteer فطير | mint tea شاى بالنعناع |





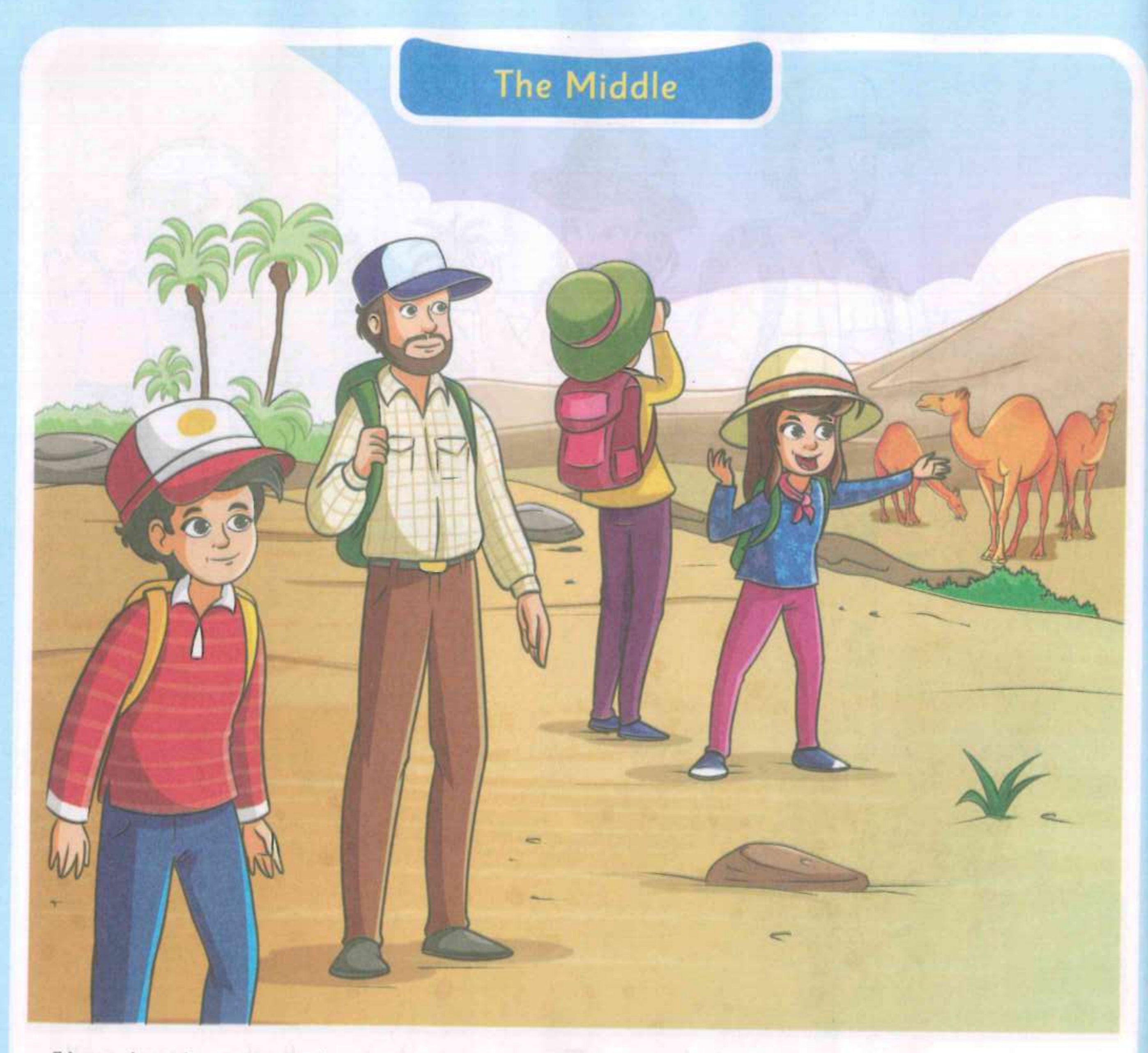
The next morning everyone is happy. They are ready to walk the nature trail. They are wearing hats, scarves and sunglasses. They have snacks and water in their backpacks. Mom has some binoculars too. She wants to look at the amazing birds that live here. They are in a beautiful part of Egypt with many types of rare animals.

الجميع سعيد فى الصباح التالى. الجميع جاهز للسير فى الممر الطبيعى. يرتدى الجميع قبعات، أوشحة ونظارات شمسية. لديهم وجبات خفيفة ومياه فى حقائب الظهر الخاصة بهم. تحضر الأم معها منظرًا (مجهر ذو عينين) أيضًا. هى تريد أن ترى الطيور التى تعيش هنا. هم الآن فى منطقة جميلة فى مصر تتواجد بها أنواع مختلفة من الحيوانات النادرة.

**Vocabulary**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| backpacks حقائب ظهر | binoculars منظار(مجهر ذو عينين) | rare animals حيوانات نادرة |

## The Middle



It's a lovely warm day, not too hot. It's a perfect day for walking. There are cactus plants and palm trees, and they see sheep and some camels.
Malak is very pleased because she loves animals. "Please walk quietly and carefully everyone," she says. "If we are quiet, we could see a fennec fox, or a dorcas gazelle, or maybe a sand cat."
The family continue along the trail. Ramy sees animals tracks in the sand. Dad takes a photo of a fennec fox. Mom sees many beautiful birds. Everyone is enjoying the trail.

إنه يوم دافء وجميل، ليس حارًا جدًا. إنه يوم مثالى للتنزه. توجد نباتات صبار وأشجار نخيل. ويرون الأغنام وبعض الجمال. ملك سعيدة جدًا؛ لأنها تحب الحيوانات.» تقول هى: «فليسير الجميع بهدوء وبحرص من فضلكم» إذا حافظنا على هدوئنا، فمن الممكن أن نرى الفَنَكْ (ثعلب الصحراء)، غزال دوركاس (غزال يعيش فى الصحراء) أو ربما قط الرمال (قط يعيش فى الصحراء).» واصلت العائلة السير بطول الممر. يرى رامى آثار أقدام حيوانات على الرمال. يلتقط الأب صورة الفَنَكْ (ثعلب الصحراء). ترى الأم العديد من الطيور الجميلة. يستمتع الجميع بالسير فى الممر.

**Vocabulary**

| cactus plants نباتات الصبار | sheep أغنام | dorcas gazelle غزال دوركاس (غزال يعيش فى الصحراء) |
|---|---|---|





Then Mom says, "Hey everyone, I have something in my shoe. Can we stop for a minute?"
She sits down. The others drink some water and wait. Ramy looks down at the rocks near the path. He sees some strange shapes inside them.
"Look!" he says. "What are these things in the rocks, Dad?"
"I don't know," says Dad. "They look like bones ..."
"We are very near the place they found the dinosaur skeleton." says Mom. "Maybe they are dinosaur bones!"
Ramy is very excited. "Let's ask Uncle Youssef!" he says. "Dad, can we call him?"
"Yes, of course." says Dad.
Uncle Youssef is very interested in the rocks Ramy found. He tells Dad to take some photographs of them and meet him at Grandma's house for dinner.

تقول الأم: «فلينظر الجميع! لدى شىء ما فى حذائى.» «هل يمكننا التوقف لدقيقة؟».
تجلس الأم. يشرب الآخرون القليل من الماء وينتظرون. ينظر رامى إلى الأسفل عند الصخور بالقرب من الممر.
يرى بعض الأشكال الغريبة بداخل الصخور. يقول رامى: «انظروا. ما هذه الأشياء بداخل الصخور يا أبى؟» يقول الأب: «لا أعلم إنها تشبه العظام...» تقول الأم: «نحن بالقرب من المكان الذى وجدوا فيه الهيكل العظمى للديناصور. ربما هى عظام ديناصور.» رامى متحمس للغاية. يقول رامى: «لنسأل العم يوسف. هل يمكن أن نتصل به يا أبى؟» يقول الأب «بالطبع».
العم يوسف مهتم جدًا بالصخور التى وجدها رامى. يخبر الأب أن يلتقط بعض الصور للصخور وأن يقابله فى منزل الجدة على موعد العشاء.

**Vocabulary**

| path ممر | strange (adj.) غريب | bones عظام | photographs صور |
|---|---|---|---|



Later that evening Dad shows Uncle Youssef the photos and Ramy shows him the place on the map. Uncle Youssef asks the family to go back there with him the next day.

عرض الأب الصور على العم يوسف لاحقًا فى المساء ووضح رامى مكان الصخور على الخريطة. يطلب العم يوسف من العائلة أن يذهبوا معه مجددًا فى اليوم التالى إلى المكان.

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| map | خريطة | go back (v.) | يذهب مجددًا |





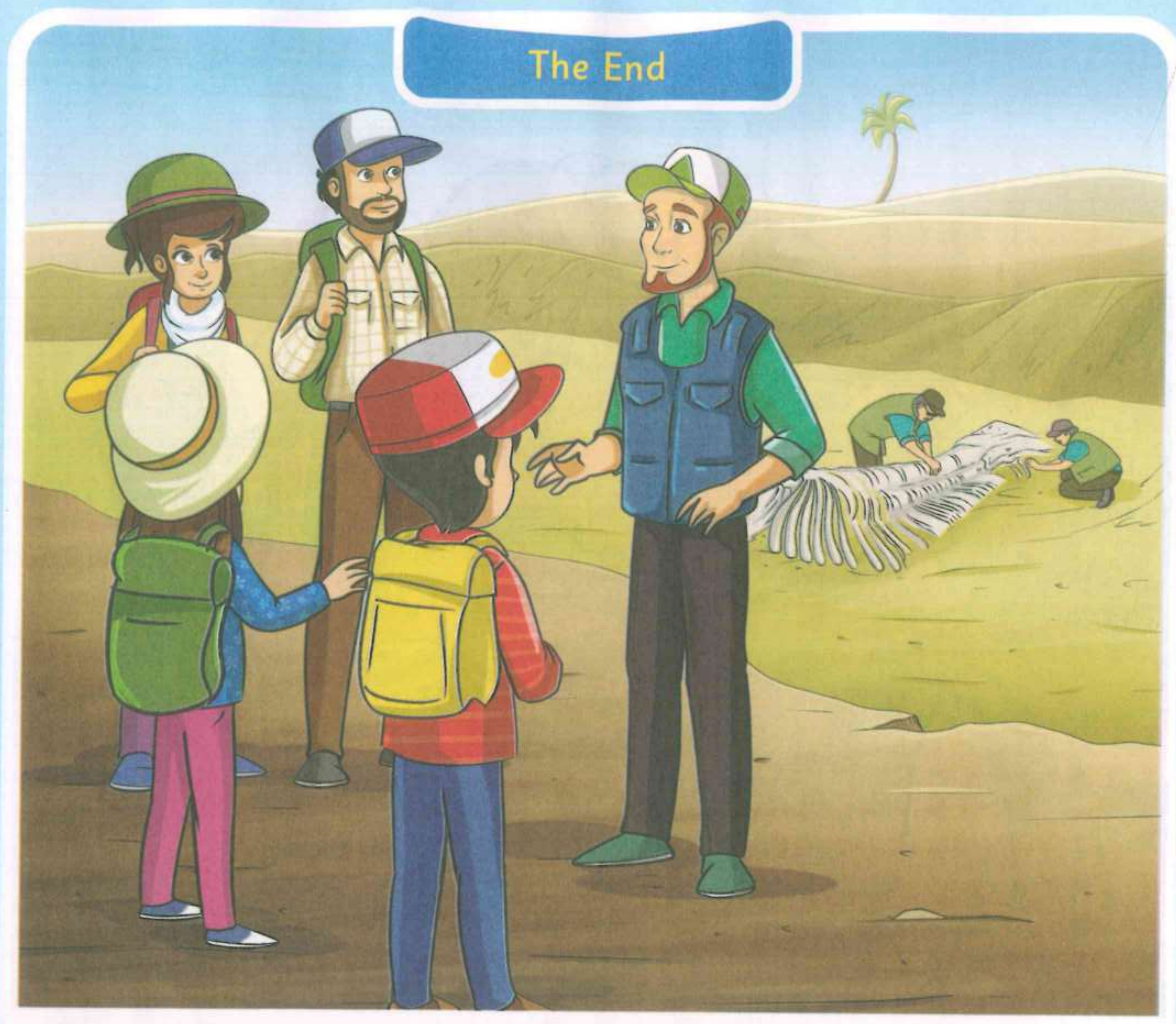
The next day they go back along the trail. They find Ramy's rocks and Uncle Youssef looks at them carefully.
"They are not dinosaur bones in the rocks," says Uncle Youssef. "But they are certainly very old. They are probably from a type of ancient ibex that doesn't exist now."
Ramy is disappointed because the bones are not from a dinosaur. But Uncle Youssef says, "Well done Ramy for finding them! It is important to take time to look at the world around us and watch things - just like an archaeologist! Now, would you all like to come to the dig and see my dinosaur skeleton?"
"Yes please, Uncle Youssef!" say Ramy and Malak.

يعود الجميع إلى الممر فى اليوم التالى. يجدوا الصخور ويقوم بفحصها العم يوسف بحرص. يقول العم يوسف «العظام الموجودة فى الصخور ليست عظام ديناصور. لكنها بالتأكيد قديمة جدًا. من المحتمل أن تكون عائدة لحيوان الوعل الأثرى (ماعز جبلى يعيش فى جبال الألب) الذى لم يعد موجودًا الآن. يشعر رامى بالإحباط لأن العظام لا تعود لديناصور. لكن يقول العم يوسف «أحسنت صنعًا يا رامى بإيجادك لها. من المهم النظر من حولنا ومشاهدة الأشياء تمامًا مثلما يفعل عالم الآثار.» هل ترغبون جميعًا بالمجىء إلى مكان الحفر وترون الهيكل العظمى للديناصور؟ يقول رامى وملك: «نعم، من فضلك يا عم يوسف».

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ibex | حيوان الوعل (ماعز جبلى يعيش فى جبال الألب) | exist (v.) | يتواجد |

# The End



"Here he is," says Uncle Youssef. "What do you think?"
"Wow!" says Ramy. "It's amazing to think it lived millions of years ago."
"And that its bones were under the ground for such a long time." says Malak.
"In fact, we found the skeleton because of climate change." says Uncle Youssef.
"Now there is less rain and fewer plants. This means the ground is dry and the wind can blow away the sand. Things that were under the ground come to the surface. That's good for archaeologists but bad for the planet."

يقول العم يوسف: «هذا هو الهيكل.» «ما رأيكم؟» يقول رامى: «واو . من الرائع مجرد التفكير إنه عاش لملايين السنوات بالماضى.» تقول ملك: «وأن عظامه ظلت تحت الأرض لوقت طويل كهذا.».

يقول العم يوسف: «فى الحقيقة لقد وجدنا الهيكل بسبب تغير المناخ.» «توجد أمطار أقل ونباتات أقل الآن. هذا يعنى أن الأرض جافة ويمكن للرياح أن تعصف الرمال بعيدًا. تظهر الأشياء الموجودة تحت الأرض على السطح. هذا شيء جيد لعلماء الآثار ولكنه شيء سيئ على الكوكب.»

**Vocabulary**

| climate change | تغير مناخى | blow away (v.) | يعصف بعيدًا | surface | سطح |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|





Later everyone is getting ready to go home.
"Thanks for showing us the dinosaur, Uncle Youssef," says Ramy. "It was so interesting. I would love to be an archaeologist. It's such a cool job!"
"It's fascinating work, but it's hard," says Uncle Youssef, "Sometimes we look for years and don't find anything."
"We can help if you're looking for other dinosaurs!" says Malak.
"Thanks for all the delicious food." says Mom. "It was lovely to see you both again."
"Thank you dear. Come back and see us soon." Grandma.

لاحقًا يستعد الجميع للعودة إلى المنزل. يقول رامى: «شكرًا لسماحك لنا برؤية الديناصور يا عم يوسف.» لقد كانت تجربة ممتعة. أريد أن أكون عالم آثار. إنها وظيفة رائعة!". يقول العم يوسف «إنه عمل مذهل ولكنه صعب.» «أحيانًا نبحث لسنوات ولا نجد أى شىء.»

تقول ملك: «يمكن أن نساعد إذا كنت تبحث عن ديناصورات أخرى.» تقول الأم «شكرًا على كل الطعام اللذيذ يا جدة» «من الجيد رؤيتكما مجددًا.» تقول الجدة «شكرًا يا عزيزتى. تعالوا مجددًا لترونا قريبًا.»

**Vocabulary**

| fascinating work | عمل مذهل | hard | صعب | look for (v.) | يبحث عن |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|



"So, did you enjoy our trip?" asks Mom in the car.
"I thought it was fantastic." says Ramy. "Me too!" says Malak.
"What do you think you learned from it?" asks Dad.
Ramy says, "I learned it's important to look around us carefully and notice things in our environment."
"Yes, that is how you can discover interesting things." adds Malak.
"You're right, kids" says Dad. "Well done!"

تسأل الأم في السيارة: « هل استمتعتم بالرحلة؟» يقول رامي: «نعم ، لقد كانت رائعة.» تقول ملك: «وأنا أيضًا.» يقول الأب: «ماذا تعتقدوا أنكم تعلمتوا من هذه الرحلة؟» يقول رامي: «تعلمت أنه من المهم النظر حولنا بحرص وملاحظة الأشياء في البيئة من حولنا.» تضيف ملك: «صحيح. هذا ما يجعلنا نكتشف أشياء مثيرة للاهتمام.» يقول الأب: «أنتم على حق يا أولاد. أحسنتم.»

**Vocabulary**

| look around (v.) | ينظر حول | environment | بيئة | discover | يكتشف |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|



# STORY





# GENERAL PRACTICE



## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح أو خطأ):

1 Ramy and Malak are playing in the yard. ( )
2 Dad is reading a story. ( )
3 A group of archaeologists found a skeleton of a dinosaur. ( )
4 Uncle Youssef is a teacher. ( )

## 2 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

1 The family go to the .................................. trail.
2 They are wearing hats, .................................. and sunglasses.
3 Mom takes .................................. to see the birds.
4 They see many rare .................................. along the trail.

## 3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 Grandma has prepared ... | a. ( ) tracks in the sand. |
| 2 Ramy sees animals ... | b. ( ) bones inside the rocks. |
| 3 There are ibex ... | c. ( ) blow away the sand. |
| 4 The wind can ... | d. ( ) strange shapes. |
| 5 Dad takes ... | e. ( ) feteer and mint tea. |
| | f. ( ) some photographs. |

**Parents' tips**
(1) Help your child listen and write T (True) or F (False).
(2) Help your child listen and complete.
(3) Help your child read and match.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (صح أو خطأ).
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

A group of archaeologists found a skeleton of a dinosaur near a small village. It's Grandparents' village. Ramy and Malak go with their family to the village to see the skeleton. Their uncle is one of those archaeologists. The family goes along a nature trail to reach the place of the skeleton. It is a perfect day for walking. There are cactus plants and palm trees in the desert. There are birds and animals like sheep and camels. Ramy finds bones near some rocks. Later on, Uncle Youssef tells them they are bones of ancient ibex. It was a fantastic adventure.

### A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 A group of archaeologists found a skeleton of a/an .................. .
a) dog b) camel c) elephant d) dinosaur

2 Ramy finds .................. near some rocks.
a) seeds b) bones c) boxes d) food

### B Answer the following questions:

3 Why do the children go to the village? ..............................

4 Who is Uncle Youssef? ..............................

## 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة:

1 disappointed – is – Ramy – Why?
..............................

2 did – the – Where – find – archaeologists – skeleton – the?
..............................

3 adventure – It – was – a fantastic.
..............................

4 trail – There's – a beautiful – nature – there.
..............................

## 6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "A fantastic Adventure" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة مكونة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر المساعدة

Where do the children go?
What do they do there?

..............................
..............................
..............................

**Parents' tips**
(4) Help your child read the text and answer. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب.
(5) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.
(6) Help your child write about the given topic. ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن الموضوع المعطى.



# Tape Scripts

## Unit 7 Homes in Egypt

### Test Yourself on Lesson 1

1

Fareeda : Welcome to my new apartment, Dina!
Dina : Thanks! Do you like living here?
Fareeda : Yes. It's a great apartment!
Dina : What's better about this new apartment?
Fareeda : It's much bigger than our old apartment. We have three bedrooms now and two bathrooms.
Dina : It's lovely! The balcony is fantastic too.

### Test Yourself on Lesson 2



My name is Omar. I love my living room. I spend most of time here in the living room. On the right, there is a couch with two modern cushions. On the left, there are an armchair and a big television in front of it. I love watching television at night with my family.

### Test Yourself on Lessons 3&4



My name is Salma. I'm doing research about Ancient Egyptian homes. The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. Not many people had beds or chairs.

### Test Yourself on Lessons 5&6



Dalida likes blogging about different things. This week she's writing about unusual homes. This topic is very interesting for her because her mom's an architect, so she sometimes takes Dalida to see some brilliant places. She found an unusual house in the Netherlands online – it's upside down!

### Al-Adwaa Test

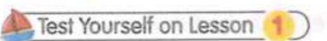
1

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall there are lots of posters of animals.

2

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes.

## Unit 8 At the doctor's



### Test Yourself on Lesson 1

1

My name is Ahmed. I go to school every day, but yesterday I didn't go to school. I felt very ill. I told my Mom and she thought I hurt my ankle at the football practice, but I didn't. Then she thought I have a headache, but I didn't. My teeth hurt. We went to the dentist. I feel fine now.

### Test Yourself on Lesson 2



Yesterday, I went to the zoo with my family. I have one brother. His name is Hossam. Hossam is blind. We both love animals. Our favorite animal is the elephant. It was our first time to go to the zoo. I described the elephant to my brother because he always wanted to know how it looks like in real life.

### Test Yourself on Lesson 3

There is a city in southern India, called Bangalore. It's a very busy and crowded hospital. When a man is sick his whole family goes with him. So, the hospital decided to teach the patients' relatives how to look after a sick person. The doctors and nurses taught the patients' relatives how to give injections and change bandages.

### Test Yourself on Lesson 4

My name is Eman. I'm a doctor. I work in a hospital. My favorite food is honey. I like honey because it's not only a food, but it's also a treatment for some injuries and illnesses. Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. I use honey too, but it's a special honey. Only doctors use it.

### Test Yourself on Lessons 5&6

Mazen : Do you have a presentation at school today?

Salma : Yes, I do.

Mazen : What is your presentation about?

Salma : It's about staying healthy.

Mazen : I think it's really important to have a balanced diet to be healthy.

Salma : That's right. Playing sports, getting enough sleep, and drinking water is also important.

### Al-Adwaa Test

1

My name is Malek. I'm a doctor in a hospital in Bangalore, India. The hospital is very busy and crowded, but It's very special because we teach the relatives of the patients how to take care of them when they leave the hospital. We turn the hospital corridors into classrooms. We teach them how to change bandages and to give injections.

2

Ahmed : What's the matter?

Mai : I feel very sick.

Ahmed : Do you have a stomachache? .

Mai : No, I don't.

Ahmed : Do you have a sore throat?

Mai : Yes, I do. I'll drink honey and lemon.

## Unit 9 My favorite animal

### Test Yourself on Lesson 1

Ayman : What did you see at the wildlife park?

Ramez : The kangaroos were interesting.

Ayman : What birds did you see?

Ramez : Lots. But my favorites were the parrots.

Ayman : What about animals that like the cold? Did you see any?

Ramez : Yes, penguins! They were in a special place inside.

### Practice on Lesson 2

1

Ayman : Hi Ali, could you jump when you were three?

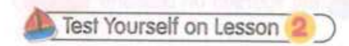
Ali : No, but I could walk.

Ayman : What else could you do when you were young?

Ali : I could jump and run.What about you?

Ayman : I could speak French when I was younger.

Ali : Wow! That sounds amazing.



### Test Yourself on Lesson 2

1

I'm Salma. Last year, I went to the desert with my family. Suddenly, we were lost in the desert. It was very hot that day. We found a big tree. We rested in its shade and drank some water. We were very grateful to that tree.

### Practice on Lesson 3

Scribes were the only people who could write everything for the people. They trained for 12 years before they wrote on papyrus. They wrote many different things like letters, records, and important papers. They also did other important things like order materials and food for the army.



### Test Yourself on Lesson 3

1

'Precipitation' is when rain falls from clouds and goes into streams, rivers, lakes, and oceans. 'Evaporation' is when the sun warms water and it becomes water vapor. Water vapor rises in the air and gets cooler; it changes back into water and forms clouds. Water in the clouds gets heavier and falls to the ground again.

### Practice on Lesson 4

1

Ali : What's your dad's job?

Hossam : He's a farmer.

Ali : What does he do?

Hossam : He produces the food which people need.

Ali : Where does he work?

Hossam : He works on his farm in Giza.

### Test Yourself on Lesson 4

1

Last winter, Waleed decided to travel west in his boat wearing his vest. He was looking for a volcano. He met some whales and they turned over his boat. He had to sit on his violin to stay afloat. He ate watermelon to stay healthy and he came to shore.

### Practice on Lessons 5&6

1

Tamer : What's your favorite unusual animal?

Amir : Dugong from Egypt.

Tamer : Why is it unusual?

Amir : It's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow

Tamer : What else?

Amir : It spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

### Test Yourself on Lessons 5&6

1

Dear Tamer,

This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. Dugong is an unusual animal from Egypt. It's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed.

Hope to hear from you soon!

Amir

### Al-Adwaa Test

1

Snails have a shell. They don't have legs or arms. Kangaroos live in Australia. They jump on two legs. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch. Bats fly at night. They sleep upside down in trees. Lions live in Africa. It's a very big cat. It's very strong.

2

Penguins live on ice and snow. They are black and white. They can swim, but they can't fly. Parrot is a bird. It is very beautiful and colorful. It lives in the rainforest. Dolphins are very intelligent. They swim in a group with their family in the ocean. Pandas live in China. They eat bamboo.

## Unit 10 Let's Visit Egypt

### Test Yourself on Lesson 1

1

Kira and Lena are from a small town in England. The stores aren't very good there. That's what they love most about Alexandria. There are many stores and shopping malls. They spend a lot of time walking around them. Kira and Lena like the people. They are so friendly and hospitable.

### Test Yourself on Lessons 2&3

1

There is lots of evidence that tells us about life in Ancient Egypt. We can learn about buildings from ancient monuments. Paintings show scenes of daily life, or special occasions, such as feasts and special events. Artifacts are things from daily life like vases and water carriers that tell us how people lived.

Test Yourself on Lesson 4

1

Gabi, the camel, was lost. He met the jerboa. The jerboa has enormous ears that he can hear the sounds of the market traders. Gabi refused any help. Soon, it was completely dark and Gabi understood he needed the animals' help. He knew he was foolish and he apologized.

Test Yourself on Lessons 5&6

1

It often rains in London, but there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions. You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames and go under the famous bridges.

Al-Adwaa Test

1

There is lots of evidence that tells us about life in Ancient Egypt. We can learn about buildings from Ancient monuments. These are structures that were built to celebrate important people. There are also paintings on walls and papyrus that show scenes of daily life, such as farmers working in the fields, or special occasions.

2

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help feed the animals. It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark that is always open. It's free to go in!

## Unit 11 Getting out in the Fresh Air

Test Yourself on Lessons 1&2

1

Sara likes to spend her weekend outdoors. She suggested to spend this weekend on a natural trail. Her family thinks it's a great idea. They have two choices. They can go to Wadi Degla, where they can see lots of animals. Or they can go to the Blue Lagoon where they can swim and dive.

Test Yourself on Lesson 3

1

The Red Sea Mountain Trail was the first long -distance hiking trail to open in Egypt. It runs for around 170 km through mountains near Hurghada. It is a community tourism project that helps the local Maaza people preserve their culture and history and share it with the hikers who come to visit this beautiful area.

Test Yourself on Lesson 4

1

My name is Lama. Yesterday I read story about a king. He was wearing a big ring. He likes nature. He was looking at the sun. Suddenly, the phone rang and he heard a big bang.

Practice on Lessons 5&6

1

A: Hi Malak! Are you free on the weekend?

B: Sure! What should we do?

A: My mom and dad want to do a desert hike. Do you want to come?

B: Yes, that sounds like fun!

A: What should I bring?

B: Hiking shoes, water, and a sweater.

Test Yourself on Lessons 5&6

1

Wael chatted with Hamza on the tablet. Hamza suggested that they would spend the evening together. Wael thought it was a great idea. They arranged to meet up at Elhurrya café where they can have a drink and play some chess. Then, they may go to the cinema to see a movie.



Al-Adwaa Test

1

The Red Sea Mountain Trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes in the Eastern Desert. The Maaza look after the trail carefully and work as guides. They tell the hikers about the geography and history of this wonderful place and about their fascinating culture.

2

Aser : Hi Ali, how are things?
Ali : Fine Aser! How are you?
Aser : Do you want to get a drink later?
Ali : That a great idea, what time?
Aser : Let's say at 5.00 pm. At Latino Café.
Ali : OK, see you later!

## Unit 12 Vacations

Test Yourself on Lesson 1

1

Mom : Where did you go on your vacation?
Nadia: We were in India last week. This week, we are in Singapore.
Mom : What is special about the city?
Nadia: There are lots of high-rise buildings. The Gardens by the Bay are really special.
Mom : Singapore is a wonderful city. What did you do there?
Nadia: We went on a boat trip to an island where there is a theme park.

Test Yourself on Lesson 2

1

Reem is going on vacation. She is traveling to Canada by plane. Today, she is packing her suitcase. There is often rain in Canada, so she is taking her umbrella. It can also be cold there, so she is packing a sweater. Reem loves swimming; she could swim in a river or a lake.

Practice on Lesson 3

1

On Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed at 4 o'clock in the afternoon. I was surprised that it was so warm in October. We went to our hotel and checked in. Our room was very comfortable. Later that evening, we had dinner at the Memphis restaurant in the city center.

Test Yourself on Lesson 3

1

I'm on a vacation in Jordan. Today, we went to the markets. When we arrived, we wandered through the streets. Several people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts from the stalls. I bought a lovely colorful rug. Saleh (our tour guide) was very kind and took it to the bus for me. I spent hours in the museum.

Test Yourself on Lesson 4

1

They all went together to the playground. Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park. In the evening, they watched the dance show and had a meal at the restaurant. Selim felt very happy, it seemed that summer in the city would be awesome!

Practice on Lessons 5&6

1

I'm on a vacation in Morocco. Today, we went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum that is 800 years old! We also visited Jardin Majorelle, a lovely garden where we had a picnic. But my favorite place is Jemaa el-Fraa, the market place. The smells coming from the market stalls make me hungry!

Test Yourself on Lessons 5&6

1

I'm on a vacation in France. We saw some famous sights. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal. I tried to speak French but I couldn't. But when I spoke English, French people understood me! We went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes.

Al-Adwaa Test

1

There are two different resources on Earth. Natural resources are materials or things we can find in nature. Trees and stone are examples of natural resources. Man-made resources are materials or things that humans have made. Plastic bottles and plastic clothes are examples of man-made resources.

2

My name is Sami. Last week I enjoyed a tour of Amman. I visited the famous Amman Citadel before exploring the Roman Amphitheater and the Archaeological Museum. After a late lunch in a local restaurant, I spent the afternoon and evening walking through Amman's many colorful markets. It was a cool tour.

## Story A Fantastic Family Adventure

Story General Practice

1

Ramy and Malak are playing in the yard. Suddenly, Dad calls them from the house. He wants them to come and see a story in the newspaper. The children run inside to see the story. A group of archaeologists found a dinosaur skeleton near Grandma's and Grandpa's village. Uncle Youssef is one of those archaeologists.

2

The family leaves Grandparents' house. They go to the nature trail. They are wearing hats, scarves and sunglasses. Mom takes binoculars to see the birds. They see many rare animals along the trail. They see cactus plants and palm trees. Dad takes photographs of animals there. It was a fantastic adventure.





## Notes